

# ENGLISH

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

20  
26



4<sup>th</sup>

PRIMARY  
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



# Contents

4

Primary

## Part 1

- **Unit 1:** The five senses
- **Unit 2:** My community
- **Unit 3:** Animals in Our World
- **Review 1**



## Part 2

- **Unit 4:** Egypt My Homeland
- **Unit 5:** A Day at Work
- **Unit 6:** Story (The Hundred Dresses)
- **Review 2**
- **Listening materials**
- **Booklet**
- **Dictation**
- **Exercises and tests**
- **Final tests and listening material**







SIGHT



HEAR



TASTE



SMELL



TOUCH

## The five senses

## الحواس الخمس

### Learning Outcomes

#### Speaking:

- Ask and answer questions about the importance of senses.

يسأل الطالب ويجيب عن أسئلة عن أهمية الحواس

- Role-play a dialog about healthy habits.
- Present a project on healthy eating habits.

يتبادل الطالب حوار حول العادات الصحية

يقدم الطالب مشروع عن عادات الأكل الصحية

#### Listening:

- Identify and understand vocabulary related to the five senses

يحدد الطالب ويفهم الكلمات المتعلقة بالحواس الخمس

- Listen to a dialog and answer comprehension questions

يفهم الطالب حوار ويجيب عن أسئلة الفهم

- Listen and complete sentences with long vowel words , e.g. 'ee' in feed

يستمع الطالب ويكمل جمل بها كلمات تحتوى على اصوات متحركة ممتدة مثل حرفى ee فى كلمة feed

#### Reading:

- Read a text about healthy habits

يقرأ الطالب نص عن العادات الصحية

- Read a story and identify the setting and characters

يقرأ الطالب قصة ويحدد وقت ومكان القصة ويتعرف على الشخصيات

- Read and order daily events using adverbs of sequence

يقرأ الطالب ويرتب أحداث يومية باستخدام ظروف التسلسل

#### Writing:

- Complete sentences using the present simple tense

يكمل الطالب جمل باستخدام المضارع البسيط

- Write a daily routine using adverbs of sequence

يكتب الطالب روتين يومي باستخدام ظروف التسلسل

- Create a presentation on healthy eating habits

ينشئ الطالب عرض تقديمي عن عادات الأكل الصحية

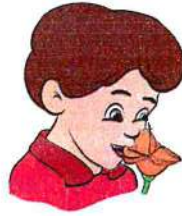
## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



taste

يتذوق



smell

يشم



see

يري



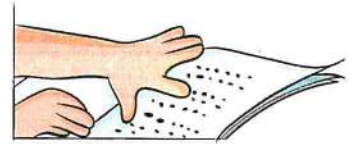
listen

يستمع



## The five senses

الحواس الخمس



touch

يلمس



## Other words

كلمات أخرى

|           |                           |           |            |
|-----------|---------------------------|-----------|------------|
| tongue    | لسان                      | smoke     | دخان       |
| garden    | حديقة                     | fire      | حريق       |
| amazing   | مدهش / رائع               | voice     | صوت        |
| sight     | الرؤية / الابصار          | music     | موسيقى     |
| hearing   | السمع                     | shape     | شكل        |
| smell     | الشم                      | delicious | شهى / لذيذ |
| colorful  | كثير الألوان / زاهى اللون | hard      | خشن        |
| butterfly | فراشة                     | soft      | ناعم       |
| important | مهم                       | huge      | ضخم        |
| excellent | ممتاز                     | loud      | عالى الصوت |
| safe      | امن                       |           |            |



## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

|                            |                    |                    |                 |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| What a beautiful day!      | يا له من يوم جميل! | What else?         | ماذا ايضا؟      |
| learn <b>about</b>         | يتعلم عن           | stay safe          | يبقى امن        |
| sense <b>of</b> hearing    | حاسة السمع         | <b>for</b> example | على سبيل المثال |
| The world <b>around</b> us | العالم من حولنا    |                    |                 |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع   | Past ماض | Present مضارع | Past ماض      |
|-----------------|----------|---------------|---------------|
| taste يتذوق     | tasted   | see يرى       | saw           |
| touch يلمس      | touched  | smell يشم     | smelled/smelt |
| help يساعد      | helped   | hear يسمع     | heard         |
| try يحاول/ يجرب | tried    | sing يغنى     | sang          |

### Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Let's + inf مصدر الفعل .

- **Let's talk** about our senses.

- I can **hear** birds **singing/sing**!

1

للاقتراح  
نستخدم

2

يأتى الفعل مضاف اليه ing أو فى  
المصدر بعد الافعال hear/ see

## Study the following

- 1 What a beautiful day in the school garden. - يا له من يوم جميل في حديقة المدرسة.
- 2 What will we learn today? - ماذا سنتعلم اليوم؟
- 3 We'll learn about our amazing senses. - سوف نتعلم عن حواسنا المذهلة.
- 4 Senses help us understand the world around us. - تساعدنا الحواس على فهم العالم من حولنا.

## Unit 1 The five senses

5 Senses also help us stay safe.

- تساعدنا الحواس أيضًا على البقاء في أمان.

6 If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

- إذا شممننا رائحة الدخان نعلم أن هناك حريق.

7 I taste delicious food with my tongue.

- أذوق الطعام اللذيذ بلساني.

8 I touch soft and hard things with my hands.

- ألمس الأشياء الناعمة والخشنة بيدي.

9 I smell flowers in the garden with my nose.

- أشم رائحة الزهور في الحديقة بأنفي.

10 I hear music and voices with my ears.

- أسمع الموسيقى والأصوات بأذني.

11 I see colors and shapes with my eyes.

- أرى الألوان والأشكال بعيني.

### «Let's Talk About Our Senses»

1 Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses<sup>(1)</sup>.

الأستاذة منى والطلاب يتحدثون عن الحواس الخمس.

**Ms. Mona:** Good morning, children! What a beautiful day in the school garden.

الأستاذة منى: صباح الخير يا أطفال! يا له من يوم جميل في حديقة المدرسة.

**Sami:** Good morning, Ms. Mona! What will we learn today?

سامي: صباح الخير يا أستاذة منى! ماذا سنتعلم اليوم؟

**Ms. Mona:** Today, we'll learn about our amazing<sup>(2)</sup> senses.

الأستاذة منى: اليوم سنتعلم عن حواسنا المذهلة.

**Salma:** What are senses, Ms. Mona?

سلمى: ما هي الحواس يا أستاذة منى؟

**Ms. Mona:** Senses help us understand<sup>(3)</sup> the world around us—like sight, hearing, and smell<sup>(4)</sup>.

الأستاذة منى: الحواس، مثل الرؤية، السمع، والشم تساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا.

**Sami:** I can hear birds singing!

سامي: أستطيع سماع غناء الطيور!

**Ms. Mona:** Yes! That's your sense of hearing. What else can we use?

الأستاذة منى: نعم! هذه هي حاسة السمع. ماذا أيضًا يمكننا أن نستخدم؟

**Salma:** I can smell the flowers and see the colorful<sup>(5)</sup> butterflies!

سلمى: أستطيع أن أشم الزهور وأرى الفراشات الملونة!

**Ms. Mona:** Excellent, Salma! Those are your senses of smell and sight. Senses also help us stay safe<sup>(6)</sup>.

الأستاذة منى: ممتاز يا سلمى! تلك هي حاستي الشم والرؤية لديك. تساعدنا الحواس أيضًا على البقاء في أمان.

**Sami:** Ms. Mona, how do our senses help us stay safe?

سامي: أستاذة منى، كيف تساعدنا حواسنا على البقاء آمنين؟

**Ms. Mona:** That's a great question, Sami! For example, if we smell smoke<sup>(7)</sup>, we know there's a fire<sup>(8)</sup>.

الأستاذة منى: هذا سؤال رائع يا سامي! على سبيل المثال، إذا شممننا رائحة دخان، نعلم أن هناك حريق.



#### Arabic Meaning

١. حواس
٢. مدهش/مذهل
٣. يفهم
٤. الشم
٥. كثير الألوان
٦. امن
٧. دخان
٨. حريق



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Ahmed goes to the park on the .....  
☐ a month                      ☐ b weekend                      ☐ c Friday                      ☐ d year
2. He plays with his .....  
☐ a brothers                      ☐ b friends                      ☐ c sisters                      ☐ d family
3. They hear the birds.....  
☐ a singing                      ☐ b playing                      ☐ c eating                      ☐ d sleeping
4. Mom made some .....  
☐ a ice cream                      ☐ b sandwiches                      ☐ c juice                      ☐ d cake

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I ..... with my nose.  
☐ a touch                      ☐ b hear                      ☐ c smell                      ☐ d eat
2. We have ..... senses.  
☐ a three                      ☐ b two                      ☐ c four                      ☐ d five
3. I ..... with my hands.  
☐ a touch                      ☐ b see                      ☐ c smell                      ☐ d hear
4. I ..... music and voices with my ears.  
☐ a smell                      ☐ b hear                      ☐ c touch                      ☐ d see
5. I ..... delicious food with my tongue.  
☐ a see                      ☐ b touch                      ☐ c taste                      ☐ d hear
6. I ..... flowers and trees with my eyes.  
☐ a touch                      ☐ b smell                      ☐ c hear                      ☐ d see

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

smoke - hear - safe - tongue - ear

Our senses are very important. I can taste food with my ① ..... I can ② ..... birds singing with my ears. Our senses help us stay ③ ..... If we smell ④ ....., we know there's a fire.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our five senses – sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch – are very important! They help us understand the world around us.

Our eyes help us see everything! We can see the colors of flowers and trees, the words in a book, and our friends playing. Our ears help us hear sounds. We can hear mom and dad talking, our favorite songs, and the birds singing outside. Our nose helps us smell different things. We can smell delicious food and beautiful flowers.

Our tongue helps us taste our food. We can taste if something is sweet like candy, or salty like popcorn. Taste makes eating fun and helps us know what we like.

Our hands help us touch things . We can feel if something is hot or cold, soft or hard. Our senses work together all the time to give us a full picture of the world. So, remember to take care of your amazing senses because they help you know things, learn, and have so much fun every day!

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our ..... help us touch things.

**a** ears

**b** nose

**c** hands

**d** eyes

2. Our .....helps us taste our food.

**a** tongue

**b** hand

**c** ear

**d** nose

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are our senses?

-----

4. What do our ears help us do?

-----

## 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your senses

five - hear - touch

-----  
-----  
-----



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                |               |                 |                  |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| healthy habits | عادات صحية    | dinner          | عشاء             |
| sharp          | ذكي / متنبه   | go to bed early | يذهب للنوم مبكرا |
| brush          | يغسل بالفرشاة | sleep           | نوم / ينام       |
| breakfast      | إفطار         | mind            | عقل / ذهن        |
| energy         | طاقة          |                 |                  |



## Other words

كلمات أخرى

|                 |                     |               |            |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|------------|
| strong          | قوى                 | during        | اثناء      |
| teeth           | اسنان               | break time    | وقت الفسحة |
| simple          | بسيط                | after that    | بعد ذلك    |
| exercises       | تمارين              | fresh         | طازج       |
| orange juice    | عصير برتقال         | vitamins      | فيتامينات  |
| plenty of water | كمية كبيرة من الماء | sweets        | حلوى       |
| class           | فصل                 | take a shower | يستحم      |
| sports          | رياضة               | enough        | كاف        |
| body            | جسد                 | coffee        | قهوة       |
| competition     | مسابقة              |               |            |



## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

|                     |                     |               |                          |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| a 10-year-old girl. | فتاه عمرها ١٠ اعوام | do homework   | يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي |
| in the morning      | في الصباح           | do well       | يحسن صنعا                |
| in the afternoon    | بعد الظهر           | enjoy her day | تستمتع بيومها            |
| in the evening      | في المساء           | do exercise   | يمارس التمارين الرياضية  |

# Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| follow | يتبع        |
| brush  | يغسل أسنانه |
| wash   | يغسل        |
| enjoy  | يستمتع بـ   |

Past ماضٍ

|          |
|----------|
| followed |
| brushed  |
| washed   |
| enjoyed  |

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| wake up | يستيقظ |
| eat     | يأكل   |
| give    | يعطي   |
| grow    | يزرع   |
| drink   | يشرب   |
| take    | يأخذ   |
| sleep   | ينام   |

Past ماضٍ

|         |
|---------|
| woke up |
| ate     |
| gave    |
| grew    |
| drank   |
| took    |
| slept   |

## Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

لا حظ

1 الصيغة التالية حيث تعتبر صفة ولا نضيف حرف s الى كلمة year

a 10-year-old girl

- Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl.

2 حروف الجر

in / at / for

● نستخدم حرف الجر in مع اوقات اليوم ما عدا night حيث نستخدم at

in the morning / afternoon / evening / at night

● ومع الوقت نستخدم at

at 6:00 pm / at 8:30 pm

● نستخدم for بمعنى لمدة أو على.

- She sleeps for 9 hours every night.

- For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food.



## Study the following

1 Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl.

- سارة فتاة تبلغ من العمر ١٠ سنوات وتتمتع بصحة جيدة.

2 She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy.

- إنها تتبع عادات جيدة كل يوم لتبقى قوية وصحية.

3 She brushes her teeth and washes her face.

- تغسل أسنانها وتغسل وجهها.

4 Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden

- بعد ذلك، تقوم ببعض التمارين البسيطة في الحديقة

5 For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food

- في وجبة الإفطار، تأكل سارة طعامًا صحيًا

6 These foods give her energy for the day

- هذه الأطعمة تمنحها الطاقة لهذا اليوم

7 At school, Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes.

- في المدرسة، تشرب سارة الكثير من الماء بين الحصص الدراسية.

8 She plays sports with her friends during break time.

- تمارس الرياضة مع أصدقائها خلال فترة الاستراحة.

9 She doesn't eat too many sweets.

- إنها لا تأكل الكثير من الحلويات.

10 She goes to bed early at 8:30 p.m.

- تذهب إلى النوم مبكرًا في الساعة ٨:٣٠ مساءً.

11 Getting enough sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay sharp.

- يساعد الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم جسدها على البقاء بصحة جيدة ويظل عقلها منتهيًا.

12 Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school.

- عادات سارة الصحية تساعد على الشعور الجيد وكذلك الأداء الجيد في المدرسة.

13 She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!

- لديها الكثير من الطاقة للتعلم واللعب والاستمتاع بيومها!

## Read the text.

اقرأ النص:

## My Healthy Day:

يومي الصحي

استمع إلى النص:



Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl<sup>(1)</sup>. She follows<sup>(2)</sup> good habits<sup>(3)</sup> every day to stay strong and healthy.

سارة فتاة تبلغ من العمر ١٠ سنوات تتمتع بصحة جيدة. إنها تتبع عادات جيدة كل يوم للبقاء قوية وبصحة جيدة.

In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises<sup>(4)</sup> in the garden.

في الصباح، تستيقظ سارة مبكرًا في الساعة السادسة صباحًا: تغسل أسنانها وتغسل وجهها. بعد ذلك، تقوم ببعض التمارين البسيطة في الحديقة.

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her energy<sup>(5)</sup> for the day.

في وجبة الإفطار، تأكل سارة طعامًا صحيًا. تشرب عصير البرتقال وتأكل البيض والخبز البني. هذه الأطعمة تمنحها الطاقة لهذا اليوم.

At school, Sarah drinks plenty of water<sup>(6)</sup> between classes. She plays sports with her friends during<sup>(7)</sup> break time.

في المدرسة، سارة تشرب الكثير من الماء بين الحصص الدراسية. تمارس الرياضة مع أصدقائها خلال فترة الاستراحة.

In the afternoon, Sarah does her homework first. After that, she helps her mother in the garden. They grow fresh vegetables<sup>(8)</sup> together.

في فترة ما بعد الظهر، تقوم سارة بواجباتها المدرسية أولاً. بعد ذلك، تساعد والدتها في الحديقة. يزرعون الخضروات الطازجة معًا.

For dinner, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits. These give her important vitamins<sup>(9)</sup>. She doesn't eat too many sweets.

في وجبة العشاء، تأكل سارة الكثير من الخضار والفواكه. حيث تعطيها فيتامينات مهمة. إنها لا تأكل الكثير من الحلويات.

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth again.

في المساء، تستحم سارة وتغسل أسنانها مرة أخرى.

She goes to bed early at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night.

تذهب إلى النوم مبكرًا في الساعة ٨:٣٠ مساءً. تنام لمدة ٩ ساعات كل ليلة.

Getting enough sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind<sup>(10)</sup> stay sharp<sup>(11)</sup>.

الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم يساعد جسدها على البقاء بصحة جيدة ويحافظ على عقلها منتبها.

Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school.

عادات سارة الصحية تساعد على الشعور بالأداء الجيد في المدرسة.

She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!

لديها الكثير من الطاقة للتعلم واللعب والاستمتاع بيومها!



## Arabic Meaning

- ١- فتاة عمرها ١٠ أعوام
- ٢- تتبع
- ٣- عادات جيدة
- ٤- تمارين
- ٥- طاقة
- ٦- كمية كبيرة من الماء
- ٧- أثناء
- ٨- خضراوات طازجة
- ٩- فيتامينات
- ١٠- ذهن / عقل
- ١١- منتبها / ذكيا



## Language in use

## Present simple

## Form

## التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Some children **play** sports after school.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + ( s / es / ies )

- He **brushes** his teeth every day.

⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل باحد الحروف الاتية

he / she / it مع **es** نضيف للفعل ( **ch / sh / o / s / ss / x / z** )brush → **brushes**catch → **catches**⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف **ies**carry → **carries**study → **studies**

## Negative

## النفي

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + **don't** + inf. مصدر الفعلHe / She / It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل- We **don't** go to school on Friday.- She **doesn't** like fish.

## Question

## السؤال

? مصدر الفعل + inf. + اسم جمع / I / we / you / they + **do** + كلمة استفهام- Where **do** you live?? مصدر الفعل + inf. + اسم مفرد / he / she / it + **does** + كلمة استفهام- What **does** he do?⊙ ويمكن أن نسال بهل حيث يبدأ السؤال ب **Do / Does**- **Do** they **play** sports?- **Yes**, they **do**. اجابة مثبتة**No**, they **don't**.

اجابة منفية

- **Does** dad **brush** his teeth?- **Yes**, he **does**. اجابة مثبتة**No**, he **doesn't**.

اجابة منفية

## Keywords

## الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year)

always - usually - often - sometimes - never

# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Salma is ..... years old.

☐ a eight

☐ b nine

☐ c seven

☐ d ten

2. She has ..... for breakfast.

☐ a cheese

☐ b eggs

☐ c meat

☐ d fruit

3. Salma goes to school by .....

☐ a car

☐ b bus

☐ c train

☐ d bike

4. Salma has lunch at ..... o'clock.

☐ a four

☐ b three

☐ c ten

☐ d five

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She is strong and healthy because she follows good ..... every day.

☐ a habits

☐ b nights

☐ c garden

☐ d tea

2. Amr ..... his teeth in the morning.

☐ a grows

☐ b wakes

☐ c brushes

☐ d takes

3. We usually have ..... in the morning.

☐ a lunch

☐ b breakfast

☐ c bed

☐ d dinner

4. Healthy food gives me ..... for the day.

☐ a energy

☐ b sleep

☐ c room

☐ d homework

5. At 10: pm I have ..... and go to bed.

☐ a lunch

☐ b dinner

☐ c breakfast

☐ d teeth

6. You should get enough ..... every night.

☐ a library

☐ b kitchen

☐ c games

☐ d sleep



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

exercises - sleep - stay - habits - vegetables

Amira is healthy. She follows good ① ..... She does ② ..... in the morning. She eats fresh fruit and ③ ..... She gets enough ④ ..... every night.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She ..... (take) vitamins every morning. SB
2. My brother and I ..... (watches) TV in the evening. SB
3. My sister ..... (study) English every day. SB
4. The nurse ..... (help) sick people. SB
5. He ..... (read) in the morning. SB
6. The girls ..... (watch) TV every day. SB
7. She ..... (don't) wake up at seven o'clock.
8. How ..... (does) they go to school?
9. She ..... (help) her mother every day.
10. Ali ..... (go) to bed at 10:00 p.m.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i have dinner at 10 o clock. ....
2. what is your favorite meal ....

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your healthy habits

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

eat - exercise - sleep

.....

.....

.....

# ★ Story Time

## Goha's Great Meal

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



|            |              |                     |                     |
|------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| market     | سوق          | jingling            | صوت جلجلة او رنين   |
| hungry     | جائع         | smell of your soup  | رائحة حسائك         |
| food       | طعام         | sound of your coins | صوت عملاتك المعدنية |
| restaurant | مطعم         | share               | يتشارك              |
| owner      | مالك         | characters          | شخصيات              |
| greedy     | طماع         | setting             | زمان ومكان قصة      |
| coins      | عملات معدنية |                     |                     |

### Other words

كلمات أخرى

|           |         |           |                  |
|-----------|---------|-----------|------------------|
| money     | نقود    | pocket    | جيب              |
| suddenly  | فجأة    | clever    | ماهر/ ذكي        |
| wonderful | رائع    | inside    | بالداخل          |
| yummy     | لذيذ    | light     | خفيف             |
| smell     | رائحة   | impressed | منبهر            |
| outside   | بالخارج | response  | استجابة/ ردة فعل |
| breath    | نفس     | cleverly  | بذكاء            |
| moment    | لحظة    | problem   | مشكلة            |

### Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|                      |                |                    |            |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------|
| walk through         | يمشي خلال      | think for a moment | يفكر للحظة |
| took a deep breath   | أخذ نفسا عميقا | take out           | يخرج       |
| makes me feel hungry | تشعرنى بالجوع  | impressed by       | منبهر بـ   |
| for free             | مجاني          | invite to          | يدعو على   |
| pay for              | يدفع مقابل     |                    |            |



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع      | Past ماضٍ | Present مضارع  | Past ماضٍ |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| stop يتوقف         | stopped   | buy يبيع       | bought    |
| close يغلق         | closed    | sit يجلس       | sat       |
| enjoy يستمتع بـ    | enjoyed   | say يقول       | said      |
| laugh يضحك         | laughed   | feel يشعر      | felt      |
| share يشارك        | shared    | think يفكر     | thought   |
| believe يصدق/ يؤمن | believed  | shake يهز/ يهز | shook     |
| offer يعرض         | offered   | pay يدفع       | paid      |
| invite يدعو        | invited   |                |           |

## Definitions

تعريفات

|                              |                                         |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| owner مالك                   | someone who has something               |
| jingling صوت جلجلة او رنين   | a light, ringing sound                  |
| share يشارك                  | to give some of what you have to others |
| hungry جائع                  | wanting to eat                          |
| greedy طماع                  | always wanting more than what is needed |
| The characters الشخصيات      | the people and animals in a story       |
| The setting زمان ومكان القصة | the time and place of a story           |

## Study the following

- 1 One morning, Goha was walking through the market.  
- في صباح أحد الأيام، كان جحا يمشى في السوق.
- 2 The yummy smell was coming from a restaurant's window.  
- كانت الرائحة اللذيذة قادمة من نافذة المطعم.
- 3 He closed his eyes and took a deep breath.  
- أغمض جحا عينيه وأخذ نفساً عميقاً.
- 4 This wonderful smell makes me feel less hungry.  
- هذه الرائحة الرائعة تجعلني أشعر بجوع أقل.
- 5 I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious soup." "أنا أستمتع برائحة حساءك اللذيذ."
- 6 The owner, was greedy.  
- كان المالك طماعاً.
- 7 You can't smell the soup for free! You must pay for it!"  
- لا يمكنك شم الحساء مجاناً! يجب أن تدفع ثمنها!"
- 8 Goha took out a few coins from his pocket.  
- أخرج جحا بعض العملات المعدنية منه جيبه.
- 9 He shook them in his hand, and they made a jingling sound.  
- فهزهم بيده، وأصدروا صوت جلبة.
- 10 If you want money for the smell of your soup, then you can take the sound of my coins.  
- إذا كنت تريد المال مقابل رائحة حساءك، إذن يمكنك أن تأخذ صوت عملاتي المعدنية.
- 11 Good food tastes better when shared with others!  
- يكون مذاق الطعام الجيد أفضل عند مشاركته مع الآخرين!

## The story elements are عناصر القصة

**Characters** الشخصيات : the people and animals in a story

**Setting** الزمان والمكان : the time and place of a story

**Plot** : الحكاية

- |               |         |                                                        |
|---------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| ➤ 1-Beginning | البداية | Meet the people/Know the place                         |
| 2-Problem     | المشكلة | Something goes wrong يحدث مشكلة ما                     |
| 3-Middle      | الوسط   | The character tries to fix it تحاول الشخصية حل المشكلة |
| 4- Climax     | الذروة  | The most exciting part اكثر جزء إثارة في القصة         |
| ➤ 5- Ending   | النهاية | The problem is solved تم حل المشكلة                    |



## 1 Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

## Goha's Great Meal

استمع إلى النص:



One morning, Goha was walking through the market. He was very hungry, but didn't have enough money to buy food. **Suddenly**<sup>(1)</sup>, he smelled something wonderful. The **yummy**<sup>(2)</sup> smell was coming from a restaurant's window. Goha stopped and sat outside the restaurant. He closed his eyes and **took a deep breath**<sup>(3)</sup>.

في صباح أحد الأيام، كان جحا يمشى في السوق. لقد كان جائعاً جداً، ولكن ليس لديه ما يكفي من المال لشراء الطعام. فجأة شم رائحة شيء رائع. كانت الرائحة اللذيذة قادمة من نافذة المطعم. توقف جحا وجلس خارج المطعم. أغمض عينيه وأخذ نفساً عميقاً..



"Ah," he said. "This wonderful smell makes me feel less hungry!" The restaurant **owner**<sup>(4)</sup> saw Goha and asked, "What are you doing?" Goha said, "I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious soup."

قال: "أه". "هذه الرائحة الرائعة تجعلني أشعر بجوع أقل!" رأى صاحب المطعم

جحا وسأل: "ماذا تفعل؟" قال جحا: "إنني أستمع براحة حساءك اللذيذ."

The owner, was **greedy**<sup>(5)</sup>. He said, "You can't smell the soup **for free**<sup>(6)</sup>! You must **pay**<sup>(7)</sup> for it!"

كان المالك طماع. قال، "لا يمكنك أن تشم رائحة الحساء مجاناً! يجب أن تدفع ثمنها!"

Goha thought **for a moment**<sup>(8)</sup>. Then took out a few coins from his **pocket**<sup>(9)</sup>. He shook them in his hand, and they made a **jingling**<sup>(10)</sup> sound.

"Here," said Goha. "If you want money for the smell of your soup, then you can take the sound of my coins."

فكر جحا للحظة. ثم أخرج بعض العملات المعدنية من جيبه. فهزهم بيده، وأصدروا صوت جلجلة.

قال جحا: "إذا كنت تريد المال مقابل رائحة حساءك، إذن يمكنك أن تأخذ صوت عملاتي المعدنية."

The owner laughed at Goha's clever answer. "Come inside," he said. "Let's **share**<sup>(11)</sup> this soup." Good food tastes better when shared with others!

ضحك المالك من إجابة جحا الذكية. قال: "تعال إلى الداخل". "هيا نتشارك هذا الحساء." يكون

مذاق الطعام الجيد أفضل عند مشاركته مع الآخرين!

## Arabic Meaning

- ١- فجأة
- ٢- لذيذ
- ٣- أخذ نفساً عميقاً
- ٤- مالك
- ٥- طماع
- ٦- مجاني
- ٧- يدفع
- ٨- للحظة
- ٩- جيب
- ١٠- صوت رنين
- ١١- يشارك

# Pronunciation

## ★ Listen and say

استمع وقل :

تنطق الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة بشكل سريع ولا تنطق كما ينطق الحرف الذى يمثلها فى الكلمة مثل حرف **a** فى كلمة **hat** فى حين تنطق الاصوات المتحركة الممتدة بشكل ممتد وتنطق مثل الحروف التى تمثلها فى الكلمة مثل نطق حرف **a** فى كلمة **plate**

استمع إلى المفردات :



### Short vowels



pot

إِناء



hat

قبعة



pen

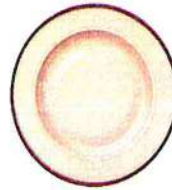
قلم جاف

### Long vowels



feed

يطعم



plate

طبق مسطح



home

منزل



heat

حرارة



cone

قمع / مخروط



bean

فول

fate

قدر

## 1 Read and learn:

اقرأ وتعلم :

**Short vowel sounds** are pronounced quickly and not pronounced as their letter name, like the "a" in "hat".

**Long vowel sounds** are pronounced the same way as their letter name like the "a" in "plate".

## 2 Listen and complete with long vowel words.

1. Hany went ..... and changed into his best clothes.
2. The children ..... their cat in the morning.
3. I washed the ..... after dinner.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Mom buys fruit and vegetables at the .....  
☐ a school      ☐ b library      ☐ c market      ☐ d bank
- We had lunch at a nice ..... yesterday.  
☐ a sea      ☐ b restaurant      ☐ c window      ☐ d money
- Someone who has something is the .....  
☐ a farmer      ☐ b teacher      ☐ c greedy      ☐ d owner
- I want something to eat. I'm .....  
☐ a hungry      ☐ b thirsty      ☐ c angry      ☐ d asleep
- He always wants more than what is needed. He is .....  
☐ a happy      ☐ b sad      ☐ c greedy      ☐ d tired
- My friend is kind. He always ..... his food with me.  
☐ a shares      ☐ b says      ☐ c shakes      ☐ d drinks
- Grandpa gave me some ..... and I bought ice cream.  
☐ a cans      ☐ b crops      ☐ c soup      ☐ d coins
- I like the ..... sound of the coins.  
☐ a jingling      ☐ b greedy      ☐ c sad      ☐ d scary
- The ..... of a story are the people and animals in it.  
☐ a settings      ☐ b characters      ☐ c lesson      ☐ d day
- The setting of a story is the ..... of it.  
☐ a time and place      ☐ b people and animals  
☐ c events      ☐ d narrator

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hear - smell - coins - restaurant - share

One day, Goha was hungry but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a ❶ ..... He sat outside, enjoying the ❷ ..... of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his ❸ ..... The owner laughed and invited him in to ❹ ..... the soup.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Once upon a time, in a small village, lived a funny man called Goha. Goha had a donkey, and this donkey was funny too!

One morning, Goha wanted to go to the market. "Come on, my friend!" Goha told his donkey. He rode on the donkey's back.

But the donkey didn't walk! It didn't move. Goha pushed and pulled the donkey but it didn't move. Then, Goha had a great idea! He got off the donkey. He picked up a big carrot. "Look, my friend!" he said, showing the carrot to the donkey.

The donkey started to walk! It followed Goha, trying to get the yummy carrot. Goha walked, and the donkey walked right behind him. They walked all the way to the market, with Goha holding the carrot and the donkey following. People at the market laughed and clapped. "Oh, Goha!" they said, "You are so clever!"

Goha just smiled. He knew his donkey loved carrots! And that's how Goha and his donkey always went to the market.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Goha wanted to go to the .....

a school

b river

c market

d bank

2. The donkey loves .....

a fruit

b carrots

c cheese

d milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Goha pick up? .....

4. What did the people do when they saw Goha? .....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what lesson do we learn .....

2. goha is funny .....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A story you read

funny - Goha - clever



## Lesson

## 4

## ★ Writing Sequence words

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|       |        |            |         |
|-------|--------|------------|---------|
| First | أولا   | After that | بعد ذلك |
| Next  | التالي | Finally    | أخيرًا  |
| Then  | ثم     |            |         |

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|               |               |           |            |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|------------|
| healthy life  | حياة صحية     | including | متضمنًا    |
| daily routine | روتين يومي    | milk      | لبن        |
| the same      | نفس الشيء     | snack     | وجبة خفيفة |
| get dressed   | يرتدى الملابس |           |            |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|                 |            |                 |                |
|-----------------|------------|-----------------|----------------|
| let me tell you | دعني أخبرك | for one hour    | لمدة ساعة      |
| tell about      | يخبر عن    | keep me healthy | تحافظ على صحتي |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

|       |      |
|-------|------|
| study | يدرس |
| play  | يلعب |

## Past ماضٍ

|         |
|---------|
| studied |
| played  |

## Present مضارع

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| let         | يدع/ يترك     |
| tell        | يخبر          |
| get dressed | يرتدى الملابس |
| go          | يذهب          |
| keep        | يحافظ على     |

## Past ماضٍ

|             |
|-------------|
| let         |
| told        |
| got dressed |
| went        |
| kept        |

## Language notes

## ملاحظات لغوية

نستخدم كلمات تسلسل الأحداث لتساعدنا على ترتيب الأحداث فهي تخبرنا ببداية ووسط ونهاية الأحداث وهي:

أخيراً ... Finally, ... بعد ذلك ... After that, ... ثم, Then, ... التالي ... Next, ... أولاً ... First,

## Example

- First, I wake up. Next, I take a shower. Then I have breakfast. After that, I get dressed. Finally, I go to school.

## Study the following

- 1 How can you stay healthy? - كيف يمكنك البقاء بصحة جيدة؟
- 2 Having a daily routine is important. - من المهم وجود روتين يومي.
- 3 Every day, I follow the same routine. - كل يوم، أتبع نفس الروتين.
- 4 I wash my face and get dressed for school. - أغسل وجهي وأرتدي ملابس لي للذهاب إلى المدرسة.
- 5 I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit. - بعد ذلك، أتناول وجبة إفطار صحية تحتوي على اللبن والفواكه.
- 6 Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. - ثم أذهب إلى المدرسة حيث أدرس وألعب مع أصدقائي.
- 7 During break time, I eat a healthy snack and drink water. - خلال فترة الاستراحة، أتناول وجبة خفيفة صحية وأشرب الماء.
- 8 After school, I have lunch with my family. - بعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتي.
- 9 After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. - بعد ذلك، أقوم بواجباتي المنزلية ثم أمارس الرياضة لمدة ساعة واحدة.
- 10 Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy. - وأخيراً، أذهب إلى النوم في ٩:٠٠ مساءً لأن النوم مبكراً يبقيني بصحة جيدة.



استمع إلى النص:



## كيف يمكنك البقاء بصحة جيدة؟ How can you stay healthy?

### My Healthy Life حياتي الصحية

Having a daily routine is important. Let me tell you about my healthy habits and how they help me stay strong.



Every day, I follow the same routine. First, I wake up early at 6:00 am. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.

Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During break time, I eat a healthy snack and drink water. After school, I have lunch with my family.

After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.

In the evening, I take a shower and have dinner. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I ..... up early at 6:00 every day.  
 a let                      b wake                      c pay                      d say
2. I wash my face and get ..... for school.  
 a tired                      b dress                      c dressed                      d address
3. I always have a ..... breakfast.  
 a healthy                      b bad                      c sad                      d scary
4. .... I eat lunch. Next, I brush my teeth.  
 a First                      b Finally                      c Than                      d One
5. I watch TV at 10:00. .... I go to bed.  
 a Than                      b After                      c Finally                      d First
6. I ..... my lessons at school.  
 a buy                      b let                      c dressed                      d study
7. I have a ..... between breakfast and lunch.  
 a snake                      b snack                      c star                      d stop
8. I sleep for 8 hours because this ..... me healthy.  
 a loses                      b tells                      c keeps                      d writes

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

healthy - After that - Finally - First - school

I have a daily routine. ❶ ..... I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. Next, I have a ❷ ..... breakfast, including milk and fruit. Then, I go to school. ❸ ..... I have lunch with my family. ❹ ..... , I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.



### 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Second) I get up early at 6:00.
2. After ..... (then) I have breakfast.
3. .... (Next to) I get dressed.
4. .... (Final) I go to school.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i have a healthy meal

-----

2. how can you stay healthy

-----

# Review



on Unit 1

The five senses

الحواس الخمس



taste يتذوق



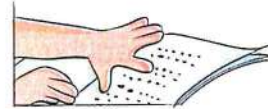
smell يشم



see يري



listen يستمع



touch يلمس

healthy habits

عادات صحية

dinner

عشاء

sharp

ذكي / متنبه

go to bed early

يذهب للنوم مبكراً

brush

يغسل بالفرشاة

sleep

نوم / ينام

breakfast

إفطار

mind

عقل / ذهن

energy

طاقة

jingling

صوت جلجلة او رنين

food

طعام

smell of your soup

رائحة حسائك

restaurant

مطعم

sound of your coins

صوت عملاتك المعدنية

owner

مالك

share

يتشارك

greedy

طماع

characters

شخصيات

coins

عملات معدنية

setting

زمان ومكان قصة

First

أولا

After that

بعد ذلك

Next,

التالي

Finally

أخيراً

Then

ثم



# Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| taste  | يتذوق       |
| touch  | يلمس        |
| brush  | يغسل أسنانه |
| enjoy  | يستمتع بـ   |
| stop   | يتوقف       |
| enjoy  | يستمتع بـ   |
| share  | يشارك       |
| invite | يدعو        |
| study  | يدرس        |

Past ماضٍ

|         |
|---------|
| tasted  |
| touched |
| brushed |
| enjoyed |
| stopped |
| enjoyed |
| shared  |
| invited |
| studied |

Present مضارع

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| see     | يرى       |
| smell   | يشم       |
| hear    | يسمع      |
| wake up | يستيقظ    |
| drink   | يشرب      |
| sleep   | ينام      |
| buy     | يبيع      |
| sit     | يجلس      |
| shake   | يرج / يهز |
| pay     | يدفع      |
| tell    | يخبر      |

Past ماضٍ

|               |
|---------------|
| saw           |
| smelled/smelt |
| heard         |
| woke up       |
| drank         |
| slept         |
| bought        |
| sat           |
| shook         |
| paid          |
| told          |

## Language in use

### Present simple

قواعد لغوية

Form

التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Some children **play** sports after school.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + ( s / es / ies )

- He **brushes** his teeth every day.

لاحظ

⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل باحد الحروف الاتية

he / she / it مع **es** نضيف للفعل ( **ch / sh / o / s / ss / x / z** )

brush → **brushes**

catch → **catches**

⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف **ies**

carry → **carries**

study → **studies**

Negative

النفي

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + **don't** + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل

- We **don't** go to school on Friday.
- She **doesn't** like fish.

Question

السؤال

? مصدر الفعل + inf. + اسم جمع / I / we / you / they + **do** + كلمة استفهام

- Where **do** you live?

? مصدر الفعل + inf. + اسم مفرد + he / she / it + **does** + كلمة استفهام

- What **does** he do?

ويمكن أن نسأل بهل حيث يبدأ السؤال ب **Do/Does**

- **Do** they **play** sports?

- **Yes**, they **do**. اجابة مثبتة      **No**, they **don't**. اجابة منفية

- **Does** dad **brush** his teeth?

- **Yes**, he **does**. اجابة مثبتة      **No**, he **doesn't**. اجابة منفية

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year)  
always - usually - often - sometimes - never





## Answers to Paragraphs

1

### Lesson 1

#### Your senses

We have five senses. We hear with our ears. We touch with our hands. We smell with our nose.

2

### Lesson 2

#### Your healthy habits

I follow some healthy habits. I eat fresh fruit and vegetables. I do exercise. I sleep for 8 hours every day.

3

### Lesson 3

#### A story you read

I read a funny story yesterday. It was about a man called Goha. A restaurant owner wanted to take his money. Goha was clever and the owner was impressed by Goha.

4

### Test

#### Your healthy day

I try to keep healthy. I eat healthy food. I practice sports for an hour. I drink plenty of water.

## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. They go to the .....

(school - market - library)

2. They buy ..... and vegetables.

(fruit - meat - fish)

3. They cook delicious .....

(dinner - breakfast - lunch)

## B- Language Functions

### 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

tongues - five - senses - taste

Hussien : How many ..... do we have?

Mahmoud : We have ..... senses?

Hussien : How can we ..... food?

Mahmoud : With our .....

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

To stay healthy, it's very important to do three things! First, eat fresh and colorful foods like fruits and vegetables, and make sure to drink lots of water every day. Second, be active and play outside! Running, jumping, and riding your bike are great ways to make your body strong. Third, sleep for eight hours so your body can rest and grow. And don't forget to wash your hands and brush your teeth.

#### A: Answer the following questions:

1. What should we eat to stay healthy? .....

2. What can we do to be active? .....

#### B: Choose the correct answer:

3. The underlined words lots of mean .....

a few

b less

c plenty of

d not many



4. We should sleep for ..... hours.

**a** five

**b** six

**c** eight

**d** two

5. Don't forget to ..... your hands

**a** brush

**b** wash

**c** shake

**d** stay

### D- Vocabulary and Structures

#### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. I .....soft and hard things with my hands.

**a** smell

**b** hear

**c** touch

2. I .....flowers in the garden with my nose.

**a** see

**b** smell

**c** taste

3. It's a healthy habit to .....exercise.

**a** brush

**b** do

**c** make

4. I .....up early every day.

**a** wake

**b** wakes

**c** waking

5. She .....her homework at 9:00 every day.

**a** doing

**b** do

**c** does

### E- Writing

#### 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. stay safe - also- help us- Senses.

2. with my tongue- taste - I - delicious food.

3. see colors - I - with my eyes - and shapes.

4. healthy food - Sarah eats - For breakfast.

5. bed early - She - at 8:30 p.m - goes to.

# Test on Unit 1

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Nada is in grade .....

**a** 2

**b** 3

**c** 4

**d** 5

2. She has ..... for breakfast.

**a** beans

**b** bread

**c** jam

**d** eggs and cheese

3. She has a/an ..... as a snack.

**a** apple

**b** banana

**c** orange

**d** date

4. She has ..... and rice for lunch.

**a** meat

**b** fish

**c** chicken

**d** fries

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't like Hazem because he is .....

**a** kind

**b** good

**c** greedy

**d** clever

2. My friend doesn't find his book so I ..... my book with him.

**a** feed

**b** share

**c** do

**d** wake

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**vitamins - sleep - meals - mind - enough**

I like healthy habits. I eat healthy ① ..... I eat lots of vegetables and fruits. They give me important ② ..... I don't eat too many sweets. I sleep for 9 hours every night. Getting enough ③ ..... helps my body stay healthy and my ④ ..... stay sharp.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Abdullah and Hamza are brothers. They wake up early at 6:30 every day. They have beans and falafel for breakfast. They get dressed. They go to school at eight. They do exercise and have a snack at the break time. They go home at 3:00. They watch TV with their parents at 9:00. They go to bed at 10:00.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Abdullah and Hamza are.....  
☐ a sisters      ☐ b parents      ☐ c brothers      ☐ d uncles
- They have ..... for breakfast.  
☐ a beans and eggs      ☐ b cheese and bread  
☐ c beans and cheese      ☐ d beans and falafel

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- What do they do at the break time? .....
- When do they go to bed? .....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We ..... (sees) with our eyes.
- Ali ..... (eat) healthy food every day.
- My sister and I ..... (sleeps) early every night.
- Layla ..... (drink) water every morning.

#### 6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you share food with friends .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your healthy day

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

keep - food - plenty

.....

.....

.....

.....





# My Community

مجتمعي

## Learning Outcomes

### Speaking:

- Discuss in pairs ways you can do to help your community.

يتناقش الطالب في ثنائيات عن طرق يمكن فعلها لمساعد مجتمعه.

- Share stories about your community's history and traditions.

يشارك الطالب قصص عن تاريخ مجتمعه وعاداته وتقاليده.

### Listening:

- Identify solutions to community problems.

يتعرف الطالب على حلول لمشكلات مجتمعه.

- Discriminate the /f/ and /v/ sounds in words.

يفرق الطالب بين الاصوات، /f/ و /v/ في كلمات.

### Reading:

- Answer questions about how people help their community based on the information provided in the text.

يجيب الطالب عن اسئلة حول مساعدة الاشخاص لمجتمعهم تبعا لمعلومات معطاه في نص.

- Suggest solutions to problems in the community.

يقترح الطالب حلول لمشاكل في المجتمع.

- Share the information about the traditions and festivals of the Delta region and Upper Egypt.

يشارك الطالب معلومات حول تقاليد واحتفالات في منطقة الدلتا وصعيد مصر.

### Writing:

- Write sentences about how you help your community.

يكتب الطالب جمل عن كيفية مساعدة المجتمع.

- Write a diary entry about your community's history.

يكتب الطالب مذكرة يومية عن تاريخ المجتمع.

- Create a poster about a community problem and its solution.

يصمم الطالب ملصقات عن المشاكل المجتمعية وطرق الحل.



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                |               |           |               |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| community      | المجتمع       | volunteer | يتطوع / متطوع |
| community park | حديقة مجتمعية | Fridays   | أيام الجمعة   |
| old clothes    | ملابس قديمة   | Saturdays | أيام السبت    |
| neighbors      | جيران         |           |               |

## Collocations

## أفعال وأسماء تأتي معاً

|                        |                      |                    |                |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| clean trash            | ينظف القمامة         | help our community | يساعد مجتمعنا  |
| plant trees            | يزرع أشجار           | collect bottles    | يجمع الزجاجات  |
| feed the dogs and cats | يطعم الكلاب والقطط   | help others        | مساعدة الآخرين |
| collect old clothes    | يجمع الملابس القديمة | helping hands      | أيدي المساعدة  |
| do a great job         | يقوم بمهمة عظيمة     |                    |                |

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى

|          |        |           |                         |
|----------|--------|-----------|-------------------------|
| bottles  | زجاجات | street    | شارع                    |
| ducks    | بط     | sometimes | أحياناً                 |
| everyone | كل شخص | both      | كلا / كلاهما (الاثنتين) |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

## تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

|                 |                   |                 |              |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| That's cool!    | ذلك رائع / جميل!  | It's fun to     | من الممتع أن |
| That's nice!    | إنه جميل          | That's great    | ذلك رائع     |
| Thanks!         | شكراً!            | What about you? | ماذا عنك؟    |
| I feel so happy | أشعر بسعادة غامرة |                 |              |

# Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |       |
|---------------|-------|
| collect       | يجمع  |
| plant         | يزرع  |
| clean         | ينظف  |
| volunteer     | يتطوع |
| happen        | يحدث  |

| Past ماض    |
|-------------|
| collected   |
| planted     |
| cleaned     |
| volunteered |
| happened    |

| Present مضارع |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| give          | يعطي        |
| feed          | يطعم        |
| do            | يؤدي / يقوم |
| make          | يجعل / يصنع |
| feel          | يشعر        |

| Past ماض |
|----------|
| gave     |
| fed      |
| did      |
| made     |
| felt     |

## Study the following

1 What do you do to help our Community?

ماذا تفعل لمساعدة مجتمعتنا؟

2 I clean trash from the streets.

أجمع القمامة من الشوارع.

3 Do you do other things to help?

هل تفعل أشياء أخرى للمساعدة؟

4 I feed the dogs and cats.

أطعم القطط والكلاب.

5 I feel so happy when I give them food.

أشعر بالسعادة الشديدة عندما أعطيهم الطعام.

6 She helps her neighbors.

هي تساعد جيرانها.

7 She volunteers at the community park.

هي تتطوع في الحديقة المجتمعية.

8 You both do a great job.

كلاكما يفعل مهمة عظيمة.

9 I collect old clothes.

أجمع الملابس القديمة.

10 When we all help, we make our Community great.

عندما نساعد بعضنا البعض، سوف نجعل مجتمعتنا عظيمة.



## Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community.

تتحدث أميرة وادم عن كيفية مساعدة مجتمعهما.

Amira : Hello, Adam! What do you do to **help** our community?

استمع إلى النص:



أميرة: مرحباً يا آدم! ماذا تفعل لمساعدة مجتمعهما؟

Adam : Hello, Amira! I **clean trash** from the streets with my friends every Saturday.

آدم: مرحباً يا أميرة! أنا أنظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت.

Amira : That's cool! Do you **plant trees** ?

أميرة: هذا رائع! هل تزرع الأشجار؟

Adam : Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park.

آدم: نعم، أنا أفعل. أزرع الأشجار في الحديقة.

Amira : That's nice! Do you do other things to help?

أميرة: هذا لطيف. هل تفعل أشياء أخرى للمساعدة؟

Adam : Yes! Sometimes I **feed the dogs and cats** . I feel so happy when I **give** them food!

آدم: نعم، أنا أحياناً أطعم الكلاب والقطط. أشعر بالسعادة الشديدة عندما أعطي لهم الطعام.

Amira : Does your sister help too?

أميرة: هل تساعد أختك أيضاً؟

Adam : Yes, she does! She helps her **neighbors** , and she **volunteers** at the **community park** .

آدم: نعم، إنها تفعل! أنها تساعد جيرانها وتتطوع في الحديقة المجتمعية.

Amira : Wow, you both do a great job!

أميرة: واو! كلاكما يقوم بعمل رائع!

Adam : Thanks! What about you? How do you help?

آدم: شكراً. وماذا عنك؟ كيف تساعدني؟

Amira : I collect **old clothes** and **give** them to people who need them.

أميرة: أجمع الملابس القديمة وأعطيها للأشخاص الذين يحتاجون إليها.

Adam : That's great! When we all help, we make our community great.

آدم: هذا رائع! عندما تساعد، بعضنا البعض، نصنع مجتمعاً رائعاً.

# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Mona volunteers at the community .....  
☐ a park                      ☐ b station                      ☐ c school                      ☐ d hospital
2. Mona plants flowers and .....  
☐ a parks                      ☐ b trees                      ☐ c pens                      ☐ d books
3. Mona collects old .....  
☐ a trash                      ☐ b clothes                      ☐ c books                      ☐ d foods
4. Mona puts trash ..... everywhere.  
☐ a pens                      ☐ b bins                      ☐ c balls                      ☐ d boys

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We ..... flowers and trees. SB  
☐ a help                      ☐ b eat                      ☐ c plant                      ☐ d make
2. We ..... the ducks every day. SB  
☐ a plant                      ☐ b feed                      ☐ c volunteer                      ☐ d make
3. I ..... old clothes and give them to people who need them. SB  
☐ a help                      ☐ b feed                      ☐ c collect                      ☐ d plant
4. I ..... trash from the streets with my friends. SB  
☐ a help                      ☐ b clean                      ☐ c plant                      ☐ d give
5. They ..... at the community garden. SB  
☐ a give                      ☐ b volunteer                      ☐ c make                      ☐ d happen
6. She helps her ..... SB  
☐ a Saturdays                      ☐ b neighbors                      ☐ c clothes                      ☐ d pens
7. My friend ..... the dogs in the street.  
☐ a collects                      ☐ b feeds                      ☐ c plants                      ☐ d makes



8. What do you do to ..... our community?

**a** collect

**b** help

**c** feed

**d** give

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

neighbors - cleans - plants - feeds - eats

Amira and Adam are friends. They help their community. Amira ① ..... trash from the streets. Amira ② ..... trees in the community garden. Adam ③ ..... the dogs and cats. Adam helps his ④ ..... . Adam and Amira do a great job.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does adam plant

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

helping neighbors

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

(help - clothes - bins)

# ★ Community Problems and Solutions

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                 |              |            |                    |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|--------------------|
| problems        | مشاكل        | fewer cars | عدد سيارات أقل     |
| traffic         | حركة المرور  | bin        | سلة مهملات         |
| solutions       | حلول         | ground     | أرضية (شارع مثلاً) |
| solve a problem | يحل مشكلة    | dirty      | قذر - متسخ         |
| instead         | بدلاً من ذلك | engine     | محرك سيارة         |



### Other words

كلمات أخرى

|            |            |              |                     |
|------------|------------|--------------|---------------------|
| the first  | الأول      | the second   | الثاني              |
| quickly    | بسرعة      | anymore      | بعد الآن - لم يعد   |
| especially | خاصة       | long showers | استحمام لفترة طويلة |
| road       | طريق       | because      | لأن                 |
| everywhere | في كل مكان |              |                     |



### Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

|                |               |                    |                                     |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| instead of     | بدلاً من      | reduce traffic     | يقلل من عدد السيارات في حركة المرور |
| throwing trash | إلقاء القمامة | Do you know how..? | هل تعرف كيف؟                        |
| on the road    | على الطريق    | That's right!      | ذلك صحيح                            |
| on the ground  | على الأرض     | make a difference  | يصنع الفارق                         |



### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

|         |       |
|---------|-------|
| discuss | يناقش |
| move    | يتحرك |
| solve   | يحل   |
| turn    | يشغل  |
| fix     | يصلح  |

Past ماضٍ

|           |
|-----------|
| discussed |
| moved     |
| solved    |
| turned    |
| fixed     |

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| leave    | يغادر - يترك |
| put      | يضع          |
| throw    | يرمي         |
| have/has | عنده - يمتلك |

Past ماضٍ

|       |
|-------|
| left  |
| put   |
| threw |
| had   |



## Study the following

- 1 Our community has many problems. مجتمعنا لديه مشاكل كثيرة.
- 2 Let's also discuss solutions to fix them. دعنا نناقش حلولاً للتغلب عليها.
- 3 Cars don't move quickly in the morning. لا تتحرك السيارات بسرعة في الصباح.
- 4 Do you know how to solve this problem? هل تعرف كيف يمكنك التغلب على هذه المشكلة؟
- 5 We don't need to use cars every day. لا نحتاج لاستخدام السيارات كل يوم.
- 6 We can take the school bus instead. يمكننا استخدام الأتوبيس بدلاً من منها.
- 7 So there will be fewer cars on the road. لذا سيكون هناك عدد سيارات أقل على الطريق.
- 8 Some people don't put trash in bins. بعض الناس لا تضع القمامة في السلات.

### Language in use

### ملاحظات لغوية

#### المضارع البسيط Present simple

● نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات اليومية والروتين اليومي.

● تذكر أن الفعل يكون من (الأثبات) :

مصدر الفعل بدون إضافات (inf) → اسم جمع, I - You - We - They

اسم مفرد He - She - It → (inf)   
 s   
 es   
 ies

- They **collect** rubbish.
- He **helps** his neighbors.

● وفي (النفى) نستخدم :

مصدر الفعل (inf) + **don't** (do not) → اسم جمع, I - You - We - They

مصدر الفعل (inf) + **doesn't** → اسم مفرد He - She - It

- Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.
- She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.

وفي السؤال نستخدم:

Do + I - you - we - they, اسم جمع (inf) مصدر الفعل?

Does + he - she - it اسم المفرد (inf) مصدر الفعل?

- Do you know how to solve a problem?
- Does your street have this problem?

Read the text. What are some problems in our community?

اقرأ النص . ما هي بعض المشكلات في مجتمعنا؟

استمع إلى النص:



Ali and Mona make a difference. علي وموني يصنعان الفرق .

Ali : Our community has many problems<sup>(1)</sup>, so let's talk about them.

Mona : OK! Let's also discuss solutions to fix them.

Ali : The first problem is traffic<sup>(2)</sup>. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools.

Mona : Do you know how to solve<sup>(3)</sup> this problem?

Ali : Yes, I think so. We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus instead. There will be fewer cars on the road.



Mona : That's right! The second problem is trash<sup>(4)</sup>. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty<sup>(5)</sup>.

Mona : Does your street have this problem?

Ali : Not anymore. Our neighbors don't throw trash on the ground. We put new bins everywhere, Everyone uses them, and now our street is very clean!

Mona : That's great!

Arabic Meaning

١. مشكلات
٢. حركة المرور
٣. يحل
٤. قمامة
٥. قذر/متسخ



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The bus helps us reduce .....

a schools

b traffic

c ground

d bins

2. You shouldn't throw trash on the .....

a traffic

b moon

c ground

d sky

3. Everyone uses trash ..... in my community.

a pen

b bins

c ground

d schools

4. Does he ..... the bus to school?

a feed

b take

c make

d solve

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**cars - solve - problem - more - fewer**

Ali and Mona are neighbors. They have many problems in their community. The first

① ..... is cars don't move quickly in the morning. Ali knows how to ② .....

the problem. He says that they don't need to use ③ ..... every day. They can

take the school bus instead. There will be ④ ..... cars on the road.

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She ..... (**don't**) like pollution.

2. They ..... (**doesn't**) use trash bins.

3. .... (**Do**) he take the bus to school?

4. .... (**Does**) cars move quickly in the morning?

5. We ..... (**doesn't**) need to use cars every day.

6. Do ..... (**she**) throw trash on the ground?

## Unit 2 My Community

7. .... (Do) your street have this problem?

8. Ali's street ..... (don't) have new bins.

9. Our neighbors don't ..... (throws) trash on the ground.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you know how to solve the problem.

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Solving our community problems

fewer cars - traffic - take the school bus



# ★ Egypt My Culture

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



|                  |               |                    |                |
|------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------|
| north            | شمال          | turban             | عمامة          |
| south            | جنوب          | spring festival    | عيد الربيع     |
| traditions       | عادات وتقاليد | sugar cane harvest | حصاد قصب السكر |
| culture          | ثقافة         | pottery            | فخار           |
| colorful carpets | سجاد ملون     | galabeya           | جلابية         |
| event            | حدث           | traditional outfit | زي تقليدي      |

### places in Egypt أماكن في مصر

|             |          |                       |                      |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| The Delta   | الدلتا   | the Red Sea           | البحر الأحمر         |
| Upper Egypt | صعيد مصر | the Mediterranean Sea | البحر الأبيض المتوسط |
| Nubia       | النوبة   |                       |                      |



### Other words

#### كلمات أخرى

|                 |               |               |                     |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|
| special regions | مناطق خاصة    | bright colors | ألوان زاهية (مضيئة) |
| decorations     | زينة          | designs       | تصميمات             |
| rice            | أرز           | pants         | بنطلون              |
| cotton          | قطن           | dress         | فستان               |
| factories       | مصانع         | difference    | اختلاف              |
| crafts          | مصنوعات يدوية | together      | سويًا/ معًا         |



### Expressions, prepositions and phrases

#### تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

|                        |                    |                    |                  |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| sing traditional songs | يغني أغاني تقليدية | known for          | مشهور بـ         |
| tell old stories       | يروى قصصاً قديمة   | by hand            | مصنوع يدوياً     |
| have special designs   | له تصميمات خاصة    | for special events | للمناسبات الخاصة |
| Even though            | بالرغم من          | in the north       | في الشمال        |
| proud of               | فخور بـ            | in the south       | في الجنوب        |

# A

## Adjectives

صفات

|             |        |           |            |
|-------------|--------|-----------|------------|
| modern      | حديث   | special   | خاص / مميز |
| traditional | تقليدي | beautiful | جميل       |
| stylish     | أنيق   | different | مختلف      |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع   | Past ماض   | Present مضارع | Past ماض |
|-----------------|------------|---------------|----------|
| work يعمل       | worked     | weave ينسج    | wove     |
| celebrate يحتفل | celebrated | tell يخبر     | told     |
| share يشارك     | shared     | am / is يكون  | was      |
| love يحب        | loved      | are يكونوا    | were     |

## Study the following

- 1 Egypt has two special regions. مصر لديها منطقتين مميزتين.
- 2 The Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. الدلتا في الشمال والصعيد في الجنوب.
- 3 Each region has its traditions and culture. كل منطقة لديها عاداتها وتقاليدها.
- 4 Farmers grow rice and cotton. يزرع الفلاحون الأرز والقطن.
- 5 They celebrate the spring festival with colorful decorations. يحتفل الناس ب عيد الربيع بالزينة الملونة.
- 6 Many people work in factories. يعمل عدد كبير من الناس ب المصانع.
- 7 Women are known for making clothes. تشتهر النساء ب صناعة الملابس.
- 8 People celebrate the sugar cane harvest. يحتفل الناس ب موسم حصاد قصب السكر.
- 9 They make pottery and weave colorful carpets. يصنعون الفخار و ينسجون سجاجيد ملونة.
- 10 Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. تغني العائلات أغاني تقليدية وتروي قصص قديمة.
- 11 Houses are painted in bright colors. تدهن البيوت ب ألوان زاهية.



## Language notes

## prefixes البادئات اللغوية

البادئة هي عبارة عن مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف توضع في بداية الكلمة لتغير معناها. على سبيل المثال هذه البادئات تستخدم لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

dis = not or opposite

il- = not

ir- = not

For example:

|             |          |   |               |              |
|-------------|----------|---|---------------|--------------|
| appear      | يظهر     | → | disappear     | يختفي        |
| logical     | منطقي    | → | illogical     | غير منطقي    |
| responsible | مسؤول    | → | irresponsible | غير مسؤول    |
| honest      | أمين     | → | dishonest     | غير أمين     |
| legal       | قانوني   | → | illegal       | غير قانوني   |
| relevant    | مرتبط بـ | → | irrelevant    | غير مرتبط بـ |

استمع إلى النص:



اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة. Read then answer the questions.

Egypt has two special **regions**<sup>(1)</sup>: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its **traditions**<sup>(2)</sup> and **culture**<sup>(3)</sup>. In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful **decorations**<sup>(4)</sup> and special foods.

لمصر منطقتان مميزتان: الدلتا في الشمال والصعيد في الجنوب. لكل منطقة تقاليدها وثقافتها. في الدلتا، يحتفلون بعيد الربيع بزيينة ملونة وأطعمة خاصة.

Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful **crafts**<sup>(5)</sup>. Women are known for making clothes.

يزرع المزارعون الأرز والقطن. ويعمل الكثيرون في المصانع ويصنعون مشغولات يدوية جميلة. وتشتهر النساء بصناعة الملابس.

In Upper Egypt, life is **different**<sup>(6)</sup>. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make **pottery**<sup>(7)</sup> and weave colorful carpets by **hand**<sup>(8)</sup>. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special **designs**<sup>(9)</sup>.

في الصعيد، تختلف الحياة. يحتفل الناس بحصاد قصب السكر بمهرجانات كبيرة. يصنعون الفخار وينسجون السجاد الملون يدوياً. تغني العائلات الأغاني التقليدية وتروي القصص القديمة. في بعض الأماكن مثل النوبة، تُطلى المنازل بألوان زاهية وتصاميم خاصة.



## Arabic Meaning

١. مناطق
٢. عادات
٣. ثقافة
٤. زينة
٥. مصنوعات يدوية
٦. مختلف
٧. فخار
٨. يدوياً
٩. تصميمات

In the Delta region, men wear galabeyas or modern clothes like pants and shirts. Women wear **stylish**<sup>(10)</sup> dresses or traditional outfits for special events.

في الدلتا، يرتدي الرجال الجلابيب أو الملابس العصرية مثل البنطلون والقمصان، وترتدي النساء فساتين أنيقة أو أزياء تقليدية للمناسبات الخاصة.

١. أنيق  
٢. عمامة

In Upper Egypt, men also wear galabeyas and sometimes **turbans**<sup>(11)</sup>. Women wear colorful dresses. Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate it together!

في الصعيد، يرتدي الرجال أيضًا الجلابيب وأحيانًا العمامات. وترتدي النساء فساتين ملونة. على الرغم من وجود بعض الاختلافات بين المكانين، إلا أنهما يشتركان في العديد من التقاليد. يفتخر المصريون بثقافتهم ويحبون الاحتفال بها معًا.

## Pronunciation

### ★Listen and say

استمع وقل :

سوف نتناول في هذا الدرس صوتي: /f/ و /v/ صوت (مهموس) لا تهتز فيه الأحبال الصوتية. ولكن صوت حرف /v/ تهتز فيه الأحبال الصوتية.

استمع إلى المفردات:



/f/ words



flag  
علم



forest  
غابة



factory  
مصنع



frog  
ضفدع

/v/ words



van  
سيارة نقل مقفلة



vest  
صديري



violin  
كمنجة



view  
منظر طبيعي



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Amr is from .....

- a** Cairo      **b** Alexandria      **c** Aswan      **d** Luxor

2. Amr wears .....

- a** pants      **b** hats      **c** a galabeya      **d** dresses

3. Amr's father makes .....

- a** books      **b** pottery      **c** pens      **d** pants

4. Amr is in primary .....

- a** 4      **b** 5      **c** 6      **d** 3

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egyptians are proud of their ..... and love to celebrate together. SB

- a** songs      **b** carpets      **c** culture      **d** factories

2. Men in Upper Egypt wear galabeyas and sometimes .....

- a** turbans      **b** dresses      **c** skirts      **d** blouses

3. People in Upper Egypt ..... the sugar cane harvest with big festivals.

- a** dislike      **b** celebrate      **c** feed      **d** hate

4. There are two main ..... in Egypt, Upper Egypt and the Delta.

- a** times      **b** colors      **c** subjects      **d** regions

5. The cat ..... after it ate all the food. SB

- a** irregular      **b** disappeared      **c** illegal      **d** dishonest

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It is ..... (legal) to drive here. You mustn't drive here. SB
2. He ..... (likes) loud noise. He can't hear it. SB
3. The verb "see" has an ..... (regular) past form. SB
4. The students are ..... (responsible). Their classroom is very dirty. SB

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt has a lot of regions. One of these regions is Upper Egypt. It's in the south of Egypt. Upper Egypt has traditions and cultures. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. In Upper Egypt, men wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans. Turbans are special hats. Men wear them on their heads.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Upper Egypt is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a north
b south
c east
d west
2. Men wear ..... in Upper Egypt.  
a cultures
b galabeyas
c rice
d festivals

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do the people in Upper Egypt wear on their heads?  
 -----
4. How do people in Upper Egypt weave carpets?  
 -----

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

egyptians are proud of their culture



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|              |                  |               |                            |
|--------------|------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| diary entry  | مذكرة يومية      | rich history  | تاريخ مليء بالأحداث (عريق) |
| history      | تاريخ            | train station | محطة قطار                  |
| neighborhood | حي سكن           | old photos    | صور قديمة                  |
| old school   | مدرسة قديمة      | years ago     | منذ سنوات مضت              |
| supermarket  | سوق (سوبر ماركت) | stall         | كُشك                       |

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|          |       |               |                    |
|----------|-------|---------------|--------------------|
| building | مبنى  | children      | أطفال              |
| garden   | حديقة | today         | اليوم              |
| farm     | مزرعة | shopping mall | المول تجاري للتسوق |
| library  | مكتبة | past          | ماضي               |

## Adjectives صفات

|           |             |        |      |
|-----------|-------------|--------|------|
| amazing   | مذهل / رائع | wooden | خشبي |
| different | مختلف       | fresh  | طازج |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|                      |                  |                    |                                |
|----------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| fifty years ago      | منذ خمسين عامًا  | weren't here then  | لم يكونوا موجودين في ذلك الوقت |
| stands now           | قائم الآن        | still stands today | مازال قائمة إلى الآن           |
| It makes me proud to | تجعلني فخوراً أن | such a             | مثل هذا                        |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

| Present مضارع |       |
|---------------|-------|
| help          | يساعد |
| play          | يلعب  |

Past ماض

helped  
played

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |      |
|---------------|------|
| show          | يعرض |
| know          | يعرف |
| see           | يرى  |

Past ماض

showed  
knew  
saw

## Study the following

1 Grandpa told me amazing stories about Community's history.

حكى لي جدي قصص مذهلة عن تاريخ المجتمع.

2 Our neighborhood was very different.

كانت منطقتنا السكنية مختلفة.

3 There was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls.

كان هناك سوقاً قديماً جميلاً به أكشاك خشبية.

4 The tall buildings weren't here then.

المباني المرتفعة لم تكن موجودة في ذلك الوقت.

5 There were small houses with beautiful gardens.

كان هناك منازل صغيرة بحدائق صغيرة.

6 The children played safely in the streets.

لعب الأطفال بأمان في الشوارع.

7 It makes me proud to know our community has such a rich history.

اشعر بالفخر عندما اعرف تاريخ مجتمعي المليء بالأحداث (العريق).





## How to write a diary entry

كيفية كتابة المذكرة اليومية

(2025, 15 March)

١- اكتب التاريخ اليومي علي الصفحة

٢- اكتب التحية علي سبيل المثال:

Dear diary

Hello diary.

٣- كتابة تفاصيل المذكرة اليومية مثلاً: وصف ليومك، ماذا فعلت به؟ من قابلت؟ ماذا رأيت؟

٤- إنهاء المذكرة اليومية:

تكتب في نهاية المذكرة اليومية خاتمة الموضوع بـ:

Yours truly,  
your name

Think and answer.

فكر واجب.

استمع إلى النص:



March 15, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, Grandpa told me **amazing**<sup>(1)</sup> stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our **neighborhood**<sup>(2)</sup> was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with **wooden stalls**<sup>(3)</sup>. People sold **fresh**<sup>(4)</sup> fruits and vegetables every morning.

روى لي جدي اليوم قصصاً رائعة عن تاريخ مجتمعنا.

قبل خمسين عاماً، كان حيناً مختلفاً تماماً! فحيث يوجد سوبر ماركت كبير الآن، كان هناك سوق قديم جميل به أكشاك خشبية. كان الناس يبيعون الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة كل صباح.

The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played **safely**<sup>(5)</sup> in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now!

لم تكن المباني الشاهقة موجودة آنذاك. بل كانت هناك منازل صغيرة ذات حدائق خلابة. كان الجميع يعرف جيرانه، وكان الأطفال يلعبون بأمان في الشوارع. حتى أن هناك محطة قطار صغيرة في مكان حديقتنا الآن!

Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that still stands today. He said people helped to build it together many years ago. It makes me proud to know our community has such a **rich history**<sup>(6)</sup>.

عرض لي جدي صوراً قديمة. رأيت المدرسة القديمة التي لا تزال قائمة حتى اليوم. قال إن الناس ساهموا في بنائها معاً منذ سنوات عديدة. إنه لأمر يجعلني فخورة بمعرفة أن مجتمعنا يتمتع بهذا التاريخ الثري.

Yours truly,  
Hana

مع خالص التحيات،

هنا

### Arabic Meaning

١. مذهل
٢. حي سكني
٣. أكشاك خشبية
٤. طازج
٥. بأمان
٦. تاريخ عظيم

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

feed- sold - stalls - stories - ago

I'm Adel. I love my grandpa very much. In the past, my Grandpa told me amazing ① ..... about our community's history. Fifty years ② ....., our neighborhood was very different. There was a beautiful old supermarket with wooden ③ ..... People ④ ..... fresh fruits and vegetables every morning.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I buy fruit and vegetables from the .....  
 a library                      b school                      c supermarket                      d station
- Our ....., is the places and people where we live.  
 a garden                      b neighborhood                      c children                      d library
- I like to read about our ..... because it's rich.  
 a photos                      b history                      c building                      d street
- Grandpa ..... me some old photos.  
 a talked                      b showed                      c ate                      d played
- My house has a beautiful .....  
 a car                      b garden                      c pen                      d station
- I buy my clothes and food from a shopping .....  
 a animal                      b mall                      c library                      d school
- It's healthy to eat ..... fruits and vegetables.  
 a bad                      b tall                      c fresh                      d sad

## 3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

there were small houses

what do you know about your community



# Review



on Unit 2

## Key vocabulary

|                  |               |                    |                            |
|------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| community        | المجتمع       | turban             | عمامة                      |
| community park   | حديقة مجتمعية | spring festival    | عيد الربيع                 |
| neighbors        | جيران         | sugar cane harvest | حصاد قصب السكر             |
| volunteer        | متطوع         | pottery            | فخار                       |
| problems         | مشاكل         | galabeya           | جلابية                     |
| traffic          | حركة المرور   | traditional outfit | زي تقليدي                  |
| solutions        | حلول          | diary entry        | مذكرة يومية                |
| solve a problem  | يحل مشكلة     | history            | تاريخ                      |
| dirty            | قذر - متسخ    | neighborhood       | حي سكن                     |
| engine           | محرك سيارة    | supermarket        | سوق (سوبر ماركت)           |
| traditions       | عادات وتقاليد | rich history       | تاريخ مليء بالأحداث (عريق) |
| culture          | ثقافة         | stall              | كُشك                       |
| colorful carpets | سجاد ملون     |                    |                            |

### places in Egypt أماكن في مصر

The Delta

الدلتا

Upper Egypt

الصعيد

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

|           |       |
|-----------|-------|
| collect   | يجمع  |
| volunteer | يتطوع |
| happen    | يحدث  |

Past ماض

|             |
|-------------|
| collected   |
| volunteered |
| happened    |

Present مضارع

|      |      |
|------|------|
| give | يعطي |
| feed | يطعم |
| feel | يشعر |

Past ماض

|      |
|------|
| gave |
| fed  |
| felt |

|           |       |            |       |           |        |
|-----------|-------|------------|-------|-----------|--------|
| discuss   | يناقش | discussed  | leave | يفادر-ترك | left   |
| solve     | يحل   | solved     | throw | يرمي      | threw  |
| turn      | يشغل  | turned     | weave | ينسج      | wove   |
| fix       | يصلح  | fixed      | show  | يعرض      | showed |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated | know  | يعرف      | knew   |

## Language in use

## ملاحظات لغوية

### المضارع البسيط Present simple

● نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات اليومية والروتين اليومي.

● تذكر أن الفعل يكون من (الأثبات) :

مصدر الفعل بدون إضافات (inf) → اسم جمع, I - You - We-They

He - She-It اسم مفرد (inf) →   

{

 s  
es  
ies

- They **collect** rubbish.

- He **helps** his neighbors.

● وفي (النفي) نستخدم :

مصدر الفعل (inf) + **don't** (do not) → اسم جمع, I - You - We-They

مصدر الفعل (inf) + **doesn't** → اسم مفرد He - She-It

- Cars **don't move** quickly in the morning.

- She **doesn't need** to use cars every day.



⊙ وفي السؤال نستخدم:

**Do** + I - you - we - they, اسم جمع, (inf) مصدر الفعل

**Does** + he - she - it, اسم المفرد, (inf) مصدر الفعل

- **Do** you know how to solve a problem?

- **Does** your street have this problem?

## Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

### prefixes البادئات اللغوية

⊙ البادئة هي عبارة عن مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف توضع في بداية الكلمة لتغير معناها. على سبيل المثال هذه البادئات تستخدم لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

dis = not or opposite

il- = not

ir- = not

For example:

|             |          |   |               |              |
|-------------|----------|---|---------------|--------------|
| appear      | يظهر     | → | disappear     | يختفي        |
| logical     | منطقي    | → | illogical     | غير منطقي    |
| responsible | مسؤول    | → | irresponsible | غير مسؤول    |
| honest      | أمين     | → | dishonest     | غير أمين     |
| legal       | قانوني   | → | illegal       | غير قانوني   |
| relevant    | مرتبط بـ | → | irrelevant    | غير مرتبط بـ |



## Answers to Paragraphs

1

### Lesson 1

#### Helping neighbors

We can help our neighbors. We can collect old clothes and give them to people who need them. We can put trash bins everywhere.

2

### Lesson 2

#### Solving our community problems

Our community has problems. The traffic is one of these problems. We can take the school bus. There will be fewer cars on the road.

3

### Test

#### the Delta region

In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton.



### A- Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختار:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Adam helps his ..... (books - community - friends)
2. Adam plants ..... in the park. (flowers - trees - mangoes)
3. Adam feeds the dogs and ..... (animals - cats - birds)

### B- Language Functions

#### 2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

flowers - plant - community - clean

- Ali : How do you help your ..... ?
- Adel : I ..... trash from the streets.
- Ali : Do you ..... trees?
- Adel : Yes, I do. I plant trees and ..... in the garden.

### C- Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our community has many problems. We can solve these problems. The first problem is traffic. Cars move slowly in the morning especially near schools. We can solve this problem. We can take the school bus instead. There will be fewer cars on the road. The second problem is the trash. Some people throw trash on the road. They don't put trash in bins. The streets look dirty. We can solve this problem. We can put bins everywhere.

#### A: Answer the following questions:

1. How can we solve the problem of traffic?

2. Where can we put trash?

## Unit 2 My Community

### B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Our community has many .....  
☐ a - books                      ☐ b goats                      ☐ c problems                      ☐ d plants
4. If we take the bus, there will be fewer .....  
☐ a - bins                      ☐ b cars                      ☐ c books                      ☐ d trash
5. The opposite of the underlined word "slowly" is .....  
☐ a - badly                      ☐ b quickly                      ☐ c sadly                      ☐ d great

### D- Vocabulary and Structures

#### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. We put trash in the .....  
☐ a books                      ☐ b pens                      ☐ c bins                      ☐ d balls
2. She ..... use the car.  
☐ a don't                      ☐ b doesn't                      ☐ c isn't                      ☐ d aren't
3. They ..... bins to put trash in them.  
☐ a uses                      ☐ b using                      ☐ c use                      ☐ d doesn't use
4. I buy food from the .....  
☐ a station                      ☐ b supermarket                      ☐ c school                      ☐ d hospital
5. Does he ..... the bus to school?  
☐ a eat                      ☐ b collect                      ☐ c take                      ☐ d stand

### E- Writing

#### 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. put - everywhere - We - bins.  
-----
2. your street - Does - this - have problem?  
-----
3. like - She - doesn't - pollution  
-----
4. has - two - Egypt - special - regions.  
-----
5. People - fresh - sold - vegetables - fruits - and.  
-----



# Test on Unit 2

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Youssef is from .....

- ☐ a The Delta      ☐ b Upper Egypt      ☐ c Cairo      ☐ d Port Said

2. Youssef is in grade .....

- ☐ a 5      ☐ b 6      ☐ c 4      ☐ d 2

3. Youssef wears a .....

- ☐ a hat      ☐ b shirt      ☐ c galabeya      ☐ d bag

4. Youssef's father works in a ..... factory.

- ☐ a carpet      ☐ b sugar cane      ☐ c clothes      ☐ d books

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. I ..... the ducks every day.

- ☐ a volunteer      ☐ b plant      ☐ c feed      ☐ d make

2. We put trash in .....

- ☐ a pens      ☐ b bins      ☐ c cars      ☐ d buses

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**sold - help - plant - collect - volunteer**

I like to help my community. I ① ..... old clothes and give them to people who need them. I ② ..... at the community park. I ③ ..... flowers and trees. I ④ ..... my neighbors.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Sandy. I live in a village in Upper Egypt. Life here is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets. My grandpa tells me old stories. My grandpa is a farmer. He grows sugar cane. My grandpa wears traditional clothes. He wears a galabeya and a turban. I love him very much.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sandy lives in a .....  
 a city                      b village                      c town                      d planet
- Sandy's grandpa is a .....  
 a teacher                      b farmer                      c doctor                      d sailor

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- Where is the village? .....
- What does Sandy's grandpa wear? .....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- They ..... (doesn't) like the pollution.
- ..... (Do) he know to solve the problem?
- He ..... (don't) play football.
- Does he ..... (volunteers) in the community garden?

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

cars don't move quickly here .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words:

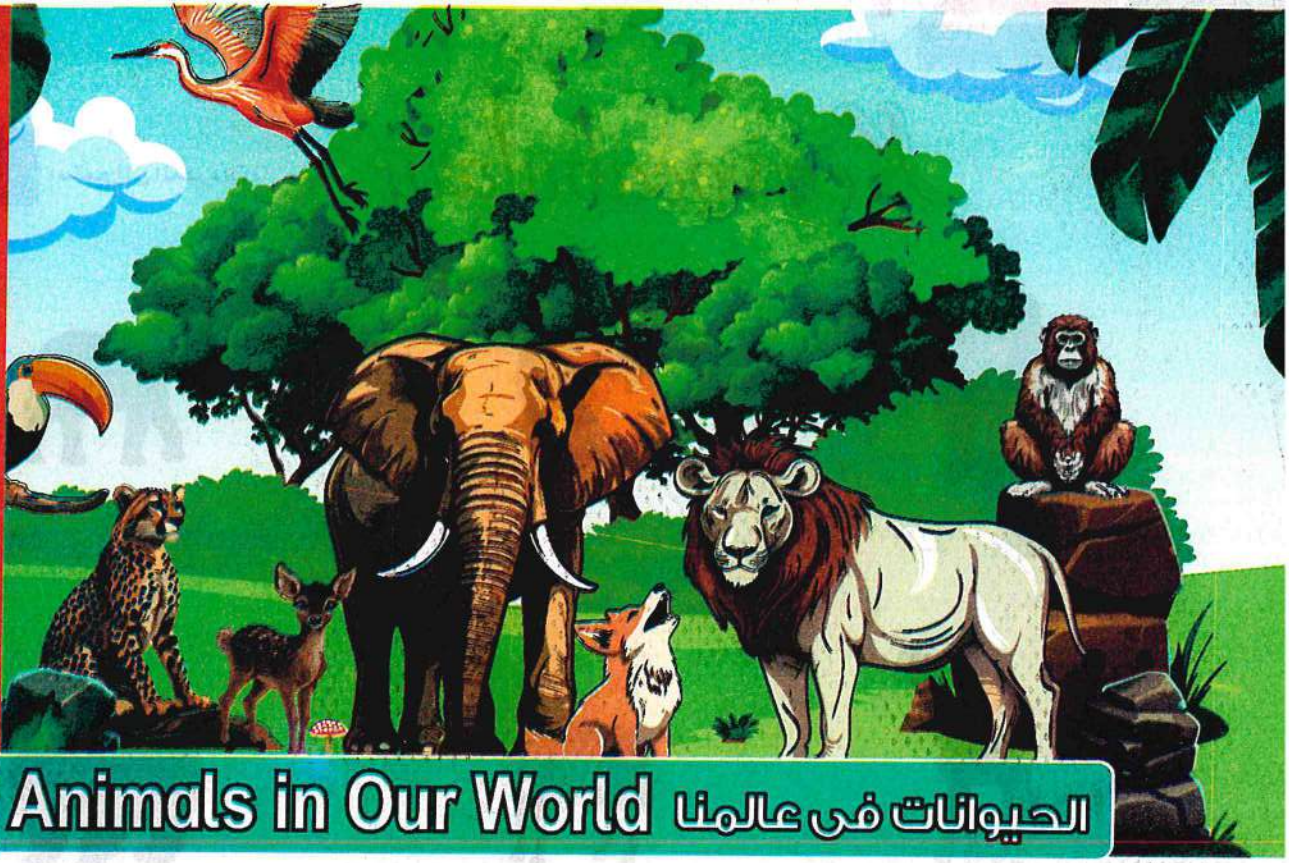
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

#### The Delta region

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Spring Festival  
rice and cotton  
celebrate





## الحيوانات فى عالمنا Animals in Our World

### Learning Outcomes

#### Speaking:

- Describe animals and their daily habits يصف الطالب الحيوانات وعاداتهم اليومية.
- Use comparative adjectives to compare different animals يستخدم الطالب صفات المقارنة ليقارن بين حيوانات مختلفة

#### Reading:

- Identify animals habits in a simple text. يتعرف الطالب على عادات الحيوانات من خلال نص بسيط
- Identify a short story with a moral lesson to get the main idea. يتعرف الطالب على قصة قصيرة بها درس اخلاقي ويفهم الفكرة الاساسية.
- Discuss the moral lessons in a short story يناقش الطالب الدرس الاخلاقي فى القصة القصيرة

#### Listening:

- Understand basic conversations about animals يفهم الطالب محادثات اساسية عن الحيوانات
- Discriminate between the consonant blends fr, dr, and pl يفرق الطالب بين الاصوات المدمجة fr \ dr \ pl

#### Writing:

- Draft a basic report about endangered animals. يكتب الطالب تقرير بسيط عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.
- Plan a research project about a forest animal. يعمل الطالب تخطيط لمشروع بحثي حول حيوان غابة.



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



lion أسد



monkey قرد



elephant فيل



giraffe زرافة



zebra حمار وحشي



bear دب

trunk

خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)

fur

فرو

tail

ذيل

claws

مخالب

striped

مخطط

forest park

حديقة الغابة

spotted

منقط

forest guide

مرشد الغابة

jungle

غابة

heavy

ثقيل



## Other words

## كلمات أخرى

neck

رقبة

sharp

حاد

gray

رصاصي

visitor

زائر

as well

ايضا - كذلك

interesting

شيق

amazing

مذهل

program

برنامج

leaves

اوراق الشجر

land

ارض



## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

|               |                 |                        |               |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------|---------------|
| point to      | يشير الى        | spray water            | يرش الماء     |
| in groups     | في مجموعات      | striped coat           | فرو مخطط      |
| hunts animals | يصطاد الحيوانات | during the day         | اثناء النهار  |
| at night      | في الليل        | climb trees            | يتسلق الاشجار |
| run in groups | تجري في مجموعات | the king of the jungle | ملك الغابة    |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع    | Past ماض | Present مضارع    | Past ماض |
|------------------|----------|------------------|----------|
| use يستخدم       | used     | meet يقابل       | met      |
| circle يضع دائرة | circled  | show يوضح - يعرض | showed   |
| hunt يصطاد       | hunted   | run يجري         | ran      |
| spray يرش        | sprayed  | catch يصطاد      | caught   |
| climb يتسلق      | climbed  | know يعرف        | knew     |
| work يعمل        | worked   |                  |          |

### Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Would you like to + مصدر الفعل؟

1  
هل تريد

- Would you like to visit the forest park?

must + مصدر الفعل.

2  
يجب أن

- We must study hard.

## Definitions

تعريفات

|             |               |                                                        |
|-------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| The giraffe | الزرافة       | It has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees. |
| The bear    | الدب          | It has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish      |
| The monkey  | القرود        | It is small and has a long tail. It climbs trees.      |
| The zebra   | الحمار المخطط | It has a striped coat. It runs in groups.              |

|              |       |                                                                   |
|--------------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The lion     | الأسد | It has yellow fur. It hunts animals at night.                     |
| The elephant | الفيل | It is big and gray. It uses its trunk to spray water on its body. |

## Study the following

### 1 The elephant uses its trunk to spray water on its body.

- يستخدم الفيل خرطوميه ليرش الماء على جسده.

### 2 The giraffe eats leaves from tall trees.

- تأكل الزرافة الأوراق من الأشجار العالية.

### 3 The lion hunts animals at night.

- يصطاد الأسد الحيوانات ليلاً.

### 4 The bear has thick fur and sharp claws.

- الدب لديه فرو سميك ومخالب حادة.

## A Day at the Forest Park

### 1 Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Omar and Nadia are talking about animals at the forest park

عمر ونادية يتحدثان عن الحيوانات في حديقة الغابة.

**Omar** : Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the forest<sup>(1)</sup> park?  
عمر: أهلاً نادية! ماذا يفعل والدك في حديقة الغابة؟

**Nadia** : He works as a forest guide<sup>(2)</sup>. He shows visitors the animals  
نادية: يعمل مرشداً سياحياً في الغابة. إنه يصطحب الزوار لمشاهدة الحيوانات.

**Omar** : Do you usually go with him?  
عمر: هل عادة ما تذهبن معه؟

**Nadia** : Sometimes.  
نادية: أحياناً.

**Omar** : What animals do visitors see?  
عمر: ما الحيوانات التي يراها الزوار؟

**Nadia** : Lots of them! They see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees.  
نادية: الكثير منها! يرون فيلة تشرب الماء وقردة تتسلق الأشجار.

**Omar** : That's interesting! Do they see lions, too?  
عمر: هذا مثير للاهتمام! هل يرون أسوداً أيضاً؟

**Nadia** : Yes, and giraffes as well.  
نادية: نعم، والزرافات أيضاً.

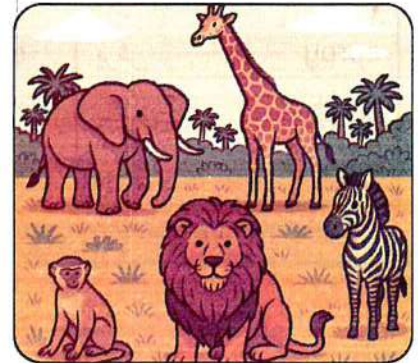
**Omar** : Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.  
عمر: غالباً ما تصطاد الأسود ليلاً وتنام نهاراً. الزرافات تأكل أوراق الأشجار المرتفعة.

**Nadia** : That's right! How do you know all of this?  
نادية: هذا صحيح! كيف عرفت كل هذا؟

**Omar** : I watch a TV program about animals.  
عمر: أشاهد برنامجاً تلفزيونياً عن الحيوانات.

**Nadia** : Would you like to visit the forest park?  
نادية: هل ترغبين بزيارة حديقة الغابة؟

**Omar** : Sure! It must be amazing to see all those animals<sup>(3)</sup> up close  
عمر: بالتأكيد! لا بد أن رؤية كل هذه الحيوانات عن قرب أمر مذهل.



### Arabic Meaning

١. غابة
٢. مرشد
٣. حيوان



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Omar's father works as a .....  
☐ a tourist guide    ☐ b teacher    ☐ c vet    ☐ d forest guide
2. Omar ..... goes with his father.  
☐ a don't    ☐ b never    ☐ c sometimes    ☐ d usually
3. Giraffes eat ..... from tall trees.  
☐ a leaves    ☐ b trunk    ☐ c meat    ☐ d fruit
4. Lions often ..... at night and sleep during the day.  
☐ a run    ☐ b hunt    ☐ c sleep    ☐ d go

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The zebra has a ..... coat. It runs in groups.  
☐ a spotted    ☐ b striped    ☐ c white    ☐ d gray
2. The ..... has thick fur and sharp claws.  
☐ a elephant    ☐ b giraffe    ☐ c lion    ☐ d bear
3. Monkeys can ..... trees.  
☐ a drink    ☐ b hunt    ☐ c climb    ☐ d run
4. My dad shows visitors the animals. He is a .....  
☐ a farmer    ☐ b police officer    ☐ c forest guide    ☐ d doctor
5. Elephants use their ..... to drink water.  
☐ a trunk    ☐ b tail    ☐ c beak    ☐ d coat

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

amazing - hunt - visitors - leaves - sad

My father works as a forest guide. He shows ① ..... the animals. I sometimes go with him. Visitors see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees. Lions often ② ..... at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat ③ ..... from tall trees. It must be ④ ..... to see all those animals up close.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The forest is a big home for many amazing animals! Some animals like to climb trees, and some like to dig in the ground. Some animals eat leaves and grass. Others eat meat. Birds sing pretty songs in the branches. Lions catches animals for food. All these animals live together and help the forest stay a happy and amazing place.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Where do many animals live?

- a** In the ocean      **b** In the forest      **c** In the desert      **d** In the sky

2. What do birds do in the trees?

- a** Dig holes      **b** Sing songs.      **c** Buy nuts      **d** Cook food

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What is the main idea of the text? .....

4. What do you think animals in the forest eat? .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Let's ..... (**going**) to school on foot.2. Students must ..... (**studying**) for the exams.3. Would you like to ..... (**has**) some juice?4. The elephant ..... (**have**) a long trunk.**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what animals do visitors see .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

**A Day at the Forest Park**

forest park - forest guide - animals

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



|          |                  |              |            |
|----------|------------------|--------------|------------|
| pet      | حيوان اليف       | special care | رعاية خاصة |
| wild     | البراري - البرية | attention    | انتباه     |
| space    | مساحة            | challenges   | تحديات     |
| officers | ضباط             | owner        | مالك       |
| cage     | قفص              |              |            |

## Other words

كلمات أخرى

|          |            |          |             |
|----------|------------|----------|-------------|
| healthy  | صحي        | ranger   | حارس الغابة |
| vet      | طبيب بيطري | stronger | أقوى        |
| safe     | آمن        | smaller  | أصغر        |
| weather  | الطقس      | fresh    | طازج        |
| everyone | الجميع     | clean    | نظيف        |
| should   | ينبغي      | way      | طريق        |
| daily    | يومي       | yearly   | سنويا       |
| monthly  | شهريا      | weekly   | اسبوعيا     |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|                |             |                       |                  |
|----------------|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| taking care of | يعتني بـ    | stay healthy and safe | يبقى صحي وآمن    |
| check health   | يكشف عن صحة | move around           | يتجول            |
| get smaller    | تصبح أصغر   | acts of kindness      | اعمال الخير      |
| care for       | يهتم بـ     | make the world better | يجعل العالم افضل |
| work hard      | يعمل بجهد   | once a week           | مرة في الاسبوع   |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| discuss       | يناقش       |
| exercise      | يتمرن-يتدرب |
| reach         | يصل         |
| face          | يواجه       |
| create        | ينشيء       |
| check         | يفحص        |
| protect       | يحمي        |
| avoid         | يتجنب       |

| Past ماض  |
|-----------|
| discussed |
| exercised |
| reached   |
| faced     |
| created   |
| checked   |
| protected |
| avoided   |

| Present مضارع |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| keep          | يحافظ على |
| feed          | يطعم      |
| make          | يجعل      |

| Past ماض |
|----------|
| kept     |
| fed      |
| made     |

## Study the following

### 1 Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe.

- تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا للحفاظ على صحتها وسلامتها.

### 2 Each animal needs special care to live well.

- يحتاج كل حيوان إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش حياة كريمة.

### 3 Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around.

- تحتاج الفيلة إلى مساحات أكبر من القرود للتنقل.

### 4 Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their health.

- تحتاج الزرافات إلى أشجار أطول للوصول إلى طعامها. ويفحص الأطباء البيطريون صحتها بانتظام.

### 5 Wild animals face different challenges.

- تواجه الحيوانات البرية تحديات مختلفة.

### 6 They need clean water and safe places to live.

- تحتاج إلى مياه نظيفة وأماكن آمنة للعيش.

### 7 Pets need daily care from their owners.

- تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها.

### 8 Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways.

- يمكن للجميع المساعدة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة.



## 9 Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people.

- اللطف بالحيوانات يعلمنا أن نكون أشخاصًا أفضل.

## 10 We can make their lives happier and healthier.

- يمكننا أن نجعل حياتهم أكثر سعادة وصحة.

## Read the text. How do vets and forest rangers help animals?

اقرأ النص. كيف يساعد البيطريون وحراس الغابة الحيوانات؟

## Helping Animals مساعدة الحيوانات



Animals need our **help** <sup>(1)</sup> to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the **wild** <sup>(2)</sup>, while others live in zoos or homes.

تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا للحفاظ على صحتها وأمانها. تعيش بعض الحيوانات في البرية، بينما يعيش البعض الآخر في حدائق الحيوان أو المنازل.

Each animal needs **special care** <sup>(3)</sup> to live well.

يحتاج كل حيوان إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش حياة جيدة.

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their health.

تحتاج حيوانات حدائق الحيوان إلى اهتمام خاص. تحتاج الفيلة إلى مساحات أكبر من القردة للتنقل. تأكل الأسود الكثير من الطعام لتبقى أقوى من الحيوانات الأخرى. تحتاج الزرافات إلى أشجار أطول للوصول إلى طعامها. يفحص الأطباء البيطريون صحتها باستمرار.

Wild animals face different **challenges** <sup>(4)</sup>. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They need clean water and **safe** <sup>(5)</sup> places to live. Forest officers now work harder than before to **protect** <sup>(6)</sup> these animals and their homes.

تواجه الحيوانات البرية تحديات مختلفة. منازلها أصبحت أصغر بسبب المدن الجديدة. تحتاج إلى مياه نظيفة وأماكن آمنة للعيش. يعمل مسؤولو الغابات الآن بجهد أكبر من ذي قبل لحماية هذه الحيوانات ومنازلها.

Pets need daily care from their **owners** <sup>(7)</sup>. Dogs need some exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables. They are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها. تحتاج الكلاب إلى ممارسة حركات رياضية. تأكل الأرانب الخضراوات الطازجة، وهي تتمتع بصحة أفضل من الحيوانات الأخرى. تحتاج الطيور إلى أقفاص أنظف من الحيوانات الأخرى.

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.

يمكن للجميع المساعدة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة. أعمال اللطف الصغيرة تجعل عالمنا أفضل. عندما نعتني بالحيوانات، نوفر لها مكانًا أكثر أمانًا. إن اللطف بالحيوانات يعلمنا أن نكون أشخاصًا أفضل. معًا، يمكننا أن نجعل حياتهم أكثر سعادة وصحة.

## Arabic Meaning

- ١- مساعدة
- ٢- البرية
- ٣- رعاية خاصة
- ٤- تحديات
- ٥- آمن
- ٦- يحمي
- ٧- ملاك

## Language in use

قواعد لغوية

## Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين الخ

## Comparative forms with short adjectives. مقارنة الصفات القصيرة

اسم + er + than + اسم + صفة

نضيف لنهاية الصفة القصيرة **er** :

tall → taller    clean → cleaner    small → smaller

- Example: A giraffe is taller than a zebra.

⊙ لاحظ : نضع كلمة **than** في جملة المقارنة.

⊙ إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك بعده ساكن فأننا نضاعف الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف **er** :

big → bigger

⊙ إذا انتهت الصفة بـ **e** نضيف **r** الى الصفة :

safe → safer

- Bears are bigger than dogs.

- Aswan is safer than Cairo.

⊙ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **y** قبله حرف ساكن نحول الـ **y** الى **i** ثم نضيف **er** :

healthy → healthier

⊙ هناك صفات شاذة لا يضاف اليها **er** تحفظ كما هي :

good → better

bad → worse

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. A lion is ..... (fast) than a turtle.
2. The sun is ..... (bright) today than it was yesterday.
3. This box is ..... (small) than the one I need.
4. The night is ..... (dark) than the day.
5. An elephant is ..... (big) than a mouse.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Wild animals face different .....  
☐ a challenges      ☐ b attention      ☐ c owners      ☐ d spaces
2. They need clean water and safe places to .....  
☐ a swim      ☐ b sleep      ☐ c live      ☐ d run
3. Forest ..... now work harder than before.  
☐ a officers      ☐ b owner      ☐ c guide      ☐ d maker
4. Forest officers help protect these animals and their .....  
☐ a help      ☐ b health      ☐ c fruit      ☐ d homes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Animals need our help to stay ..... and safe .  
☐ a healthy      ☐ b well      ☐ c high      ☐ d hungry
2. When we care for animals, we ..... a safer place for them.  
☐ a guess      ☐ b have      ☐ c create      ☐ d do
3. Elephants need ..... than monkeys because they are bigger. SB  
☐ a smaller spaces      ☐ b bigger spaces      ☐ c cleaner water      ☐ d taller trees
4. Wild animals need ..... and safe homes to live well. SB  
☐ a bigger cities      ☐ b hotter food      ☐ c clean water      ☐ d smaller cages
5. Pets need ..... care from their owners. SB  
☐ a weekly      ☐ b daily      ☐ c monthly      ☐ d yearly
6. Everyone can help protect animals by ..... SB  
☐ a keeping them in zoos      ☐ b showing kindness and caring for them  
☐ c avoiding them      ☐ d feeding them only once a week

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

exercise - animals - owners - leaves - fresh

Pets need daily care from their <sup>1</sup> ..... . Dogs need some <sup>2</sup> .....  
 Rabbits eat <sup>3</sup> ..... vegetables. They are healthier than other animals. Birds  
 need cleaner cages than other <sup>4</sup> .....

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Animals live in the wild, zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well. Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their health. Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The general idea of the text is about.....  
☐ a better world      ☐ b helping animals.      ☐ c wild animals      ☐ d special animals
- The underlined word "simple" means .....  
☐ a safe      ☐ b important      ☐ c healthy      ☐ d easy

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- What happens when we care for animals? .....
- Why do animals need our help? .....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Aswan is ..... (**hot**) than Cairo in the summer.
- A lion is ..... (**fast**) than a cat.
- My brother is taller ..... (**then**) Samy.
- He is ..... (**strong**) than his friend.
- Elephants are ..... (**big**) than monkeys.
- The weather today is ..... (**cold**) than yesterday.
- He is ..... (**tall**) his brother.
- Marwa is ..... (**lazy**) than her sister.
- The Earth is ..... (**big**) than the Moon.
- Her dress is ..... (**pretty**) than the one in the window.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we should help our pets. ....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

Helping Animals

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

stay healthy - spaces - food



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|        |            |             |                |
|--------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| danger | خطر        | pretend     | يتظاهر         |
| weak   | ضعيف       | wise        | حكيم           |
| trick  | خدعة       | footprints  | اثار الاقدام   |
| cave   | كهف        | fluffy      | كثير الفرو     |
| moral  | درس / مغزى | the one-way | الاتجاه الواحد |

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|          |           |          |                  |
|----------|-----------|----------|------------------|
| clever   | ماهر      | near     | قريب - بالقرب من |
| entrance | مدخل مكان | others   | الآخرين          |
| mistake  | خطأ       | again    | مرة أخرى         |
| safely   | بأمان     | quick    | سريع             |
| friendly | ودود      | mountain | جبل              |
| hole     | حفرة      | left     | باقية - متبقية   |
| marks    | علامات    |          |                  |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|            |            |          |          |
|------------|------------|----------|----------|
| in danger  | معرض للخطر | look at  | ينظر الى |
| think of   | يفكر في    | look for | يبحث عن  |
| learn from | يتعلم من   |          |          |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الافعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present مضارع

|          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| pretend  | يتظاهر      |
| reply    | يرد         |
| trick    | يخدع        |
| call out | يصيح / يصرخ |
| die      | يموت        |
| look at  | ينظر الى    |
| enter    | يدخل        |
| return   | يعود        |

## Past ماضى

|            |
|------------|
| pretended  |
| replied    |
| tricked    |
| called out |
| died       |
| looked at  |
| entered    |
| returned   |

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| know     | يعرف     |
| go into  | يدخل الى |
| come     | يأتي     |
| lie down | يستلقي   |
| stand    | يقف      |

## Past ماضى

|           |
|-----------|
| knew      |
| went into |
| came      |
| lay down  |
| stood     |

## Definitions تعريفات

|            |            |                                                                |
|------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| hunt       | يصطاد      | to look for and catch animals for food.                        |
| pretended  | تظاهر      | acted like something is true when it isn't.                    |
| lay down   | رقد        | put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed.           |
| fox        | ثعلب       | is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur. |
| cave       | كهف        | is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.          |
| footprints | اثار اقدام | are marks left by feet.                                        |

### Language Notes

### ملاحظات لغوية

مصدر + to + صفة + too.

جدا لدرجة ألا

- The tea was too hot to drink.

## Study the following

1 He was too weak to catch animals for food.

- كان ضعيفا لدرجة انه لم يستطع اصطياد الحيوانات للحصول على طعام

2 The lion went into his cave and pretended to be very sick.

- دخل الاسد الى الكهف وتظاهر بانّه مريض جدا

3 Many animals heard about the sick lion.

- سمعت حيوانات كثيرة عن الاسد المريض

4 One by one, they went into his cave to visit him. But none of them came out!

- دخلوا الى كهف الاسد واحد تلو الآخر لزيارته ولكن ولا احد منهم خرج

5 The lion was catching and eating each visitor.

- كان الاسد يصطاد ويأكل كل زائر منهم

6 I can see that many animals went into your cave.

- استطيع ان ارى عديد من الحيوانات دخلوا الى الكهف

7 I learn from the mistakes of others!

- اتعلم من اخطاء الآخرين



## The Old Lion and The Fox الأسد العجوز والثعلب

## 1 Listen and read. How did the fox know it was in danger?

استمع واقرأ. كيف عرف الثعلب أنه في خطر؟

Once there was an old **lion** who couldn't hunt anymore. He was too **weak** to **catch** animals for food.

استمع إلى النص:



في قديم الزمان، كان هناك أسد عجوز لم يعد قادرًا على الصيد. كان ضعيفًا جدًا بحيث لا يستطيع اصطياد الحيوانات كطعام.

So, he thought of a clever **trick**.

لذلك، فكر في خدعة ذكية.

The lion went into his cave and **pretended** to be very sick. He lay down and called out, "Oh! I am so sick! Please, come visit me before I die!"

دخل الأسد كهفه وتظاهر بأنه مريض جدًا. استلقى وصرخ: «يا إلهي! أنا مريض جدًا! أرجوكم، تعالوا لزيارتي قبل أن أموت!»

Many **animals** heard about the sick lion. One by one, they went into his **cave** to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was **catching** and **eating** each visitor.

سمعت حيوانات كثيرة بأمر الأسد المريض. فدخلت كهفه واحدًا تلو الآخر لزيارته. لكن لم يخرج أي منها! كان الأسد يصطاد ويأكل كل زائر.

A wise **fox** came near the cave. He saw many **footprints** going in, but none coming out. The fox stood at the cave entrance and said, "Hello, dear lion! How are you feeling?"

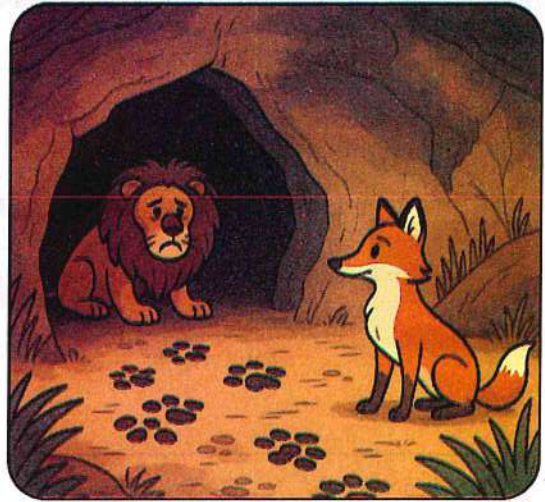
اقترب ثعلب حكيم من الكهف. رأى آثار أقدام كثيرة تدخل، لكن لا شيء يخرج. وقف الثعلب عند مدخل الكهف وقال: «مرحبًا عزيزي الأسد كيف حالك؟»

"Oh, dear fox!" said the lion. "I am very sick. Please come in and visit me!"

قال الأسد: «يا عزيزي الثعلب! أنا مريض جدًا. أرجوكم تعال لزيارتي!»

The fox looked at the footprints again and replied, "Thank you, but I can see that many animals went into your cave, but none came out. I **learn** from the mistakes of others!" And with that the wise fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

نظر الثعلب إلى آثار الأقدام مرة أخرى، وأجاب: «شكرًا لك، ولكنني أرى أن العديد من الحيوانات دخلت كهفك، لكن لم يخرج منها أحد. أتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!». وهكذا هرب الثعلب الحكيم سالمًا، ساخرًا من خدعة الأسد.





# Pronunciation

## ★Listen and say

استمع وقل :

When you blend, you join one or more sounds together to read a word, like "drum" and "fruit"

عندما تدمج حرفين ساكنين، فإنك تقوم بضم صوت واحد أو أكثر معاً لقراءة كلمة.

استمع إلى المفردات،



dr  
words



drum

طبله



draw

يرسم

pl  
words



plane

طائرة



plant

نبات

fr  
words



fruit

فاكهة



frown

عابس (مكشر)



## Other words

كلمات أخرى

log

قطعة من الخشب

sink

حوض / يغرق

hit

يضرب

easily

بسهولة

1

Read, sort, and write the words in bold in the correct blend group.

اقرأ وضع الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقیل فی مكانها الصحيح

1. I can hit the **drum** easily.

fr-: \_\_\_\_\_

2. She has a nice **plant** in her room.

dr-: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Adam likes eating **fruit** every day.

pl-: \_\_\_\_\_



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The lion went into his cave and ..... to be very.  
 a checked      b made      c learn      d pretended
- The lion thought of a clever ..... to catch animals.  
 a help      b trick      c break      d cave
- ..... are marks left by feet.  
 a Prints      b Hunt      c Pretend      d Footprints
- Lions hunt at night. The word hunt means .....  
 a sleep      b catch      c trick      d think
- Some animals sleep at ..... in mountains.  
 a banks      b seas      c caves      d sky
- We should ..... from our mistakes.  
 a learn      b hear      c pretend      d catch

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pretended - called - cave - hunt - footprints

SB

There was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't ① ..... He tricked animals and ② ..... to be sick in his cave. He called to the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way ③ ..... He didn't go into the ④ ..... and ran away safely.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, an old, weak lion could no longer hunt for food. He thought of a trick to catch animals in his cave. He pretended to be sick in his cave. He called out for visitors and many animals heard, then came to see him. They entered his cave one by one to visit him. The lion was catching and eating them so no one came out. The lion could not catch the fox, as he was wise, he ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

## Unit 3 Animals in Our World

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The general idea of the text is about .....  
**a** a trick                      **b** helping each other.  
**c** eating food                **d** a wise lion
- The underlined word "**him**" refers to the .....  
**a** animals                      **b** visitors                      **c** fox                      **d** lion

### B. Answer the following questions:

- What was the lion's trick? .....
- Why didn't the animals come out? .....

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Ramy is ..... (**short**) than Ahmed.
- Trains are faster ..... (**that**) bikes.
- English is ..... (**easy**) than maths.
- Sharks are ..... (**big**) than dolphins.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

The old lion couldn't hunt anymore

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

the old lion and the fox

weak - hunt - trick - pretend

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                 |                |             |               |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| endangered      | مهدد بالانقراض | disappear   | يختفي         |
| Arabian Leopard | النمر العربي   | forever     | للأبد         |
| remain          | متبقية - باقية | species     | أنواع - فصائل |
| habitat         | موطن - بيئة    | dugong      | حيوان الأطوم  |
| pollution       | تلوث           | fishing net | شبكة الصيد    |

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|           |       |                 |              |
|-----------|-------|-----------------|--------------|
| around    | حول   | the Middle East | الشرق الأوسط |
| gentle    | لطيف  | beautiful       | جميل         |
| world     | عالم  | reason          | سبب          |
| important | هام   | The Red Sea     | البحر الأحمر |
| fact      | حقيقة | sea grass       | عشب بحري     |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

| Present مضارع |       |
|---------------|-------|
| protect       | يحمي  |
| stop          | يوقف  |
| act           | يتصرف |
| happen        | يحدث  |
| create        | ينشيء |
| disappear     | يختفي |

#### Past ماضٍ

|             |
|-------------|
| protected   |
| stopped     |
| acted       |
| happened    |
| created     |
| disappeared |

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |       |
|---------------|-------|
| build         | يبني  |
| choose        | يختار |
| teach         | يعلم  |
| write         | يكتب  |

#### Past ماضٍ

|        |
|--------|
| built  |
| chose  |
| taught |
| wrote  |

## Study the following

1 Why should we protect animals?

- لماذا ينبغي علينا ان نحمي الحيوانات؟

2 Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever.

- العديد من الحيوانات حول العالم معرضة لخطر الاختفاء الى الابد.

3 The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East.

- النمر العربي واحد من اكثر الحيوانات المعرضة للانقراض في مصر والشرق الاوسط .

4 Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild.

- اقل من ٢٠٠ من هذه القطط الجميلة متبقى في البراري.

5 The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt.

- أطوم البحر الاحمر هو حيوان اخر معرض للانقراض في مصر

6 They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

- هم معرضون للخطر بسبب التلوث وشبكات الصيد

7 If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.

- اذا لم نتصرف الان فان هذه الحيوانات يمكن ان تختفي للابد.

8 What will happen if we don't help these animals?

- ما الذي سوف يحدث لو لم تساعد هذه الحيوانات؟



## Why should we protect animals?

### 1 Read the text:

اقرأ النص

#### Endangered Animals الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض

Many animals around the world are in **danger**<sup>(1)</sup> of **disappearing**<sup>(2)</sup> forever. These animals are called endangered **species**<sup>(3)</sup>. Here are some important facts about endangered animals.

العديد من الحيوانات حول العالم مُعرضة لخطر الانقراض إلى الأبد. تُسمى هذه الحيوانات بالأنواع المهددة بالانقراض. إليكم بعض الحقائق المهمة عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.



The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their **habitats**<sup>(4)</sup>.

يُعد النمر العربي من أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض في مصر والشرق الأوسط. لم يتبق من هذه القطط الجميلة سوى أقل من ٢٠٠ في البرية. أحد أسباب أن هذه الحيوانات مُعرضة للخطر لأن الناس يبنون منازل في موائلها.

The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

أطوم البحر الأحمر هو حيوان آخر مُعرض للخطر في مصر. تتغذى هذه الحيوانات البحرية اللطيفة على الأعشاب البحرية. وهي مُعرضة للخطر بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.

#### Arabic Meaning

- ١- معرض للخطر
- ٢- يختفي
- ٣- أنواع
- ٤- بيئات

#### To help these animals, we need to:

لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، علينا:

- protect their homes • حماية مساكنها.
- stop pollution • وقف التلوث.
- create safe areas • إنشاء مناطق آمنة.
- teach people about them • توعية الناس عنها.



If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever.

إذا لم نتحرك الآن، فقد تختفي هذه الحيوانات الرائعة إلى الأبد.

**THINK :** What will happen if we don't help these animals?

# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The Arabian ..... is one of the most endangered animals.  
☐ a camel      ☐ b bear      ☐ c Leopard      ☐ d dolphin
- The Arabian Leopard lives in Egypt and the.....  
☐ a Middle East      ☐ b Red Sea      ☐ c America      ☐ d France
- Less than .....Arabian Leopards remain in the wild.  
☐ a 200      ☐ b 250      ☐ c 300      ☐ d 350
- They are in danger because people build .....in their habitats.  
☐ a houses      ☐ b pollution      ☐ c fishing nets      ☐ d food

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

- Let's all work together to .....pollution.  
☐ a learn      ☐ b create      ☐ c help      ☐ d stop
- Many animals around the world are in danger of .....forever.  
☐ a disappearing      ☐ b pretending      ☐ c sleeping      ☐ d killing
- The Red Sea Dugong is a/an ..... animal. This means it can disappear.  
☐ a endangered      ☐ b dangerous      ☐ c lazy      ☐ d strong
- ..... are groups of animals or plants.  
☐ a Spices      ☐ b Stars      ☐ c Species      ☐ d Snacks
- We should .....endangered animals.  
☐ a hunt      ☐ b protect      ☐ c stop      ☐ d kill



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

species - pollution - grass - houses - danger

Many animals around the world are in ① ..... of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered ② ..... The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea ③ ..... They are in danger because of ④ ..... and fishing nets.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

should we protect animals

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

#### Endangered Animals

disappearing forever - Arabian Leopard - The Red Sea Dugong

# Review



## on Unit 3



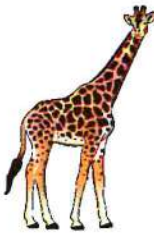
lion أسد



monkey قرد



elephant فيل



giraffe زرافة



zebra حمار وحشى



bear دب

|              |                     |                 |                |
|--------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| trunk        | خرطوم الفيل (زلومة) | danger          | خطر            |
| striped      | مخطط                | trick           | خدعة           |
| spotted      | منقط                | moral           | درس / مغزى     |
| jungle       | غابة                | pretend         | يتظاهر         |
| fur          | فرو                 | wise            | حكيم           |
| claws        | مخالب               | footprints      | اثار الاقدام   |
| forest park  | حديقة الغابة        | endangered      | مهدد بالانقراض |
| forest guide | مرشد الغابة         | Arabian Leopard | النمر العربي   |
| space        | مساحة               | remain          | متبقية - باقية |
| officers     | ضباط                | pollution       | تلوث           |
| cage         | قفص                 | disappear       | يختفي          |
| special care | رعاية خاصة          | species         | انواع - فصائل  |
| attention    | انتباه              | dugong          | حيوان الأطوم   |
| challenges   | تحديات              | fishing net     | شبكة الصيد     |
| owner        | مالك                |                 |                |



# Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع           | Past ماض    | Present مضارع    | Past ماض  |
|-------------------------|-------------|------------------|-----------|
| hunt يصطاد              | hunted      | show يوضح - يعرض | showed    |
| spray يرش               | sprayed     | run يجري         | ran       |
| climb يتسلق             | climbed     | catch يصطاد      | caught    |
| exercise يتمرّن - يتدرب | exercised   | keep يحافظ على   | kept      |
| protect يحمي            | protected   | feed يطعم        | fed       |
| avoid يتجنب             | avoided     | go into يدخل الى | went into |
| pretend يتظاهر          | pretended   | lie down يستلقي  | lay down  |
| trick يخدع              | tricked     | stand يقف        | stood     |
| return يعود             | returned    | build يبني       | built     |
| stop يوقف               | stopped     | choose يختار     | chose     |
| disappear يختفي         | disappeared | write يكتب       | wrote     |

## Language in use

قواعد لغوية

### Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين او شيئين او حيوانين الخ

### Comparative forms with short adjectives. مقارنة الصفات القصيرة

اسم + er + than + اسم + صفة

نضيف لنهاية الصفة القصيرة **er**:

tall → taller clean → cleaner small → smaller

- Example: A giraffe is taller than a zebra.

لاحظ: نضع كلمة **than** في جملة المقارنة.

إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك بعده ساكن فأننا نضاعف الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف **er**:

big → bigger

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ **e** نضيف **r** الى الصفة:

safe → safer

- Bears are bigger than dogs.

- Aswan is safer than Cairo.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **y** قبله حرف ساكن نحول الـ **y** الى **i** ثم نضيف **er**:

healthy → healthier



## Answers to Paragraphs

1

### Lesson 1

#### A Day at the Forest Park

I sometimes go to the forest park with my dad. My dad works as a forest guide. He shows visitors the animals. Visitors see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees.

2

### Lesson 2

#### Helping Animals

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well.

3

### Lesson 3

#### The old lion and the fox

There was an old lion who couldn't hunt anymore. He called out the animals to visit him to eat them. He ate all the animals but he couldn't catch the wise fox.

4

### Lesson 4

#### Endangered Animals

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild.

5

### Test

#### The Red Sea Dugong

The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.



## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. The Red Sea ..... is an endangered animal.

(Dugong - Dolphin - Snake)

2. They live in .....

(Paris - London - Egypt)

3. They are in danger because of pollution and .....

(fishing nets - animals - building)

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

see - go - park - visitors

Omar : What does your dad do at the forest ① - - - - - ?

Nadia : He works as a forest guide.

Omar : Do you usually ② - - - - - with him?

Nadia : Yes, I do.

Omar : What animals do ③ - - - - - see?

Nadia : They ④ - - - - - lots of them.

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I sometimes go with my father to the forest park. He works there. He is a forest guide. He shows visitors the animals. I love animals. I always watch TV programs about animals to know more about them. The program helped me to know that lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

#### A) Answer the following:

1. Where does the father work?

-----

2. How does the programs helped the writer?

-----

## B) Choose the correct answer:

3. The father is .....  
 a a forest guide      b vet      c baker      d farmer
4. Giraffes eat ..... from tall trees.  
 a trees      b plants      c grass      d leaves
5. The writer always watches TV programs about.....  
 a lions      b food      c animals      d football

## D- Vocabulary and Structures

### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. The lion has yellow fur. It ..... animals at night.  
 a hunts      b runs      c protects      d builds
2. The zebra has a ..... coat.  
 a long      b striped      c brown      d heavy
3. Elephants need bigger ..... than monkeys to move around.  
 a hospitals      b trees      c plants      d spaces
4. A giraffe is ..... than a zebra.  
 a the taller      b tallest      c tall      d taller
5. Rabbits are healthier ..... other animals.  
 a than      b thin      c that      d then

## E- Writing

### 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. colder - today - yesterday - is - than - The weather .

2. old - anymore - lion - couldn't - The - hunt.

3. the cave - saw - footprints - The fox - into - going

4. important - learn - to - from - the mistakes - It's

5. These - sea - gentle - eat - sea - animals - grass.



# Test on Unit 3

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Animals need our help to stay ..... and safe.  
☐ a protect      ☐ b will      ☐ c big      ☐ d healthy
- Some animals live in the.....  
☐ a wild      ☐ b trees      ☐ c land      ☐ d air
- Each animal needs special ..... to live well.  
☐ a leaves      ☐ b fruit      ☐ c care      ☐ d vegetables
- Some animals live in the zoos or .....  
☐ a stores      ☐ b leaves      ☐ c spices      ☐ d homes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Wild animals ..... different challenges.  
☐ a face      ☐ b make      ☐ c protect      ☐ d hunt
- The wise fox saw many ..... going in, but none coming out.  
☐ a mountains      ☐ b owners      ☐ c footprints      ☐ d habitats

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**East - habitats - disappearing - ways - species**

Many animals around the world are in danger of ① ..... forever.  
 These animals are called endangered ② ..... The Arabian Leopard is  
 one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle ③ .....  
 One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in  
 their ④ .....

4

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Each animal needs special care to live well.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:**

1. The general idea of the text is about .....  
**a** building houses                      **b** staying healthy  
**c** catching animals                    **d** helping animals
2. The word "others" refers to the .....  
**a** special care                 **b** animals.                    **c** acts                          **d** zoos

**B) Answer the following questions:**

3. How can we help animals? -----
4. Where do some animal live? -----

5

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This book is ..... (**big**) than that one.
2. Her hair is..... (**short**) than it was before.
3. We ran..... (**fast**) than we did last week
4. This box is smaller ..... (**that**) that one.

## 6

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he is a forest guide \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

## 7

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن :

**مجاہد عنہ آخر الوحدة**

## The Red Sea Dugong

**endangered - grass - pollution - disappear**



# Review 1



on units 1, 2 & 3

## Objectives of Review 1

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 3 - 1.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

- To evaluate progress in Units 3 -1.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

# ★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

## Unit 1

### The five senses

### الحواس الخمس



taste يتذوق



smell يشم



see يري



listen يستمع



touch يلمس

healthy habits

عادات صحية

go to bed early

يذهب للنوم مبكرا

sharp

ذكي / متنبه

sleep

نوم / ينام

brush

يغسل بالفرشاة

mind

عقل / ذهن

breakfast

إفطار

jingling

صوت جلبة او رنين

energy

طاقة

smell of your soup

رائحة حسائك

food

طعام

sound of your coins

صوت عملاتك المعدنية

owner

مالك

share

يتشارك

greedy

طماع

characters

شخصيات

coins

عملات معدنية

setting

زمان ومكان قصة

dinner

عشاء



# Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع     | Past ماض | Present مضارع   | Past ماض      |
|-------------------|----------|-----------------|---------------|
| taste يتذوق       | tasted   | see يرى         | saw           |
| touch يلمس        | touched  | smell يشم       | smelled/smelt |
| brush يغسل أسنانه | brushed  | hear يسمع       | heard         |
| enjoy يستمتع بـ   | enjoyed  | wake up يستيقظ  | woke up       |
| share يشارك       | shared   | sleep ينام      | slept         |
| invite يدعو       | invited  | sit يجلس        | sat           |
|                   |          | shake يرج / يهز | shook         |
|                   |          | pay يدفع        | paid          |
|                   |          | tell يخبر       | told          |

## Language in use

### Present simple

قواعد لغوية

#### Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Some children **play** sports after school.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + ( s / es / ies )

- He **brushes** his teeth every day.

لاحظ

⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل باحد الحروف الاتية

he / she / it مع **es** نضيف للفعل ( **ch / sh / o / s / ss / x / z** )

brush → **brushes**

catch → **catches**

⊙ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف **ies**

carry → **carries**

study → **studies**

## Negative

النفى

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + **don't** + inf. مصدر الفعلHe / She / It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل

- We **don't** go to school on Friday.
- She **doesn't** like fish.

## Question

السؤال

? مصدر الفعل inf. + اسم جمع I / we / you / they + **do** + كلمة استفهام

- Where **do** you live?

? مصدر الفعل inf. + اسم مفرد he / she / it + **does** + كلمة استفهام

- What **does** he do?

ويمكن أن نسأل بهل حيث يبدأ السؤال ب **Do/ Does**

- **Do** they **play** sports?

- **Yes**, they **do**. اجابة مثبتة      **No**, they **don't**. اجابة منفية

- **Does** dad **brush** his teeth?

- **Yes**, he **does**. اجابة مثبتة      **No**, he **doesn't**. اجابة منفية

## Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year)

always - usually - often - sometimes - never



## Unit 2

## Key vocabulary

|                  |               |                    |                            |
|------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| community        | المجتمع       | turban             | عمامة                      |
| community park   | حديقة مجتمعية | spring festival    | عيد الربيع                 |
| neighbors        | جيران         | sugar cane harvest | حصاد قصب السكر             |
| volunteer        | متطوع         | pottery            | فخار                       |
| problems         | مشاكل         | galabeya           | جلابية                     |
| traffic          | حركة المرور   | traditional outfit | زي تقليدي                  |
| solutions        | حلول          | diary entry        | مذكرة يومية                |
| solve a problem  | يحل مشكلة     | history            | تاريخ                      |
| dirty            | قذر - متسخ    | neighborhood       | حي سكني                    |
| engine           | محرك سيارة    | supermarket        | سوق (سوبر ماركت)           |
| traditions       | عادات وتقاليد | rich history       | تاريخ مليء بالأحداث (عريق) |
| culture          | ثقافة         | stall              | كُشك                       |
| colorful carpets | سجاد ملون     |                    |                            |

## places in Egypt أماكن في مصر

The Delta

الدلتا

Upper Egypt

الصعيد

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

Present مضارع

|           |       |
|-----------|-------|
| collect   | يجمع  |
| volunteer | يتطوع |

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماض

|             |
|-------------|
| collected   |
| volunteered |

## Irregular verbs

Present مضارع

|      |      |
|------|------|
| feed | يطعم |
| feel | يشعر |

أفعال غير منتظمة

Past ماض

|      |
|------|
| fed  |
| felt |

## Review 1

|           |       |            |              |        |
|-----------|-------|------------|--------------|--------|
| discuss   | يناقش | discussed  | يغادر - يترك | left   |
| solve     | يحل   | solved     | يرمي         | threw  |
| fix       | يصلح  | fixed      | ينسج         | wove   |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated | يعرض         | showed |

## Language notes

## ملاحظات لغوية

### prefixes البادئات اللغوية

البادئة هي عبارة عن مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف توضع في بداية الكلمة لتغير معناها. على سبيل المثال هذه البادئات تستخدم لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

dis = not or opposite

il- = not

ir- = not

### For example:

|             |          |   |               |              |
|-------------|----------|---|---------------|--------------|
| appear      | يظهر     | → | disappear     | يختفي        |
| logical     | منطقي    | → | illogical     | غير منطقي    |
| responsible | مسؤول    | → | irresponsible | غير مسؤول    |
| honest      | أمين     | → | dishonest     | غير أمين     |
| legal       | قانوني   | → | illegal       | غير قانوني   |
| relevant    | مرتبط بـ | → | irrelevant    | غير مرتبط بـ |



## Unit 3



lion أسد



monkey قرد



elephant فيل



giraffe زرافة



zebra حمار وحشى



bear دب

|              |                     |                 |                |
|--------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| trunk        | خرطوم الفيل (زلومة) | danger          | خطر            |
| striped      | مخطط                | trick           | خدعة           |
| spotted      | منقط                | moral           | درس / مغزى     |
| jungle       | غابة                | pretend         | يتظاهر         |
| fur          | فرو                 | wise            | حكيم           |
| claws        | مخالب               | footprints      | اثار الاقدام   |
| forest park  | حديقة الغابة        | endangered      | مهدد بالانقراض |
| forest guide | مرشد الغابة         | Arabian Leopard | النمر العربي   |
| space        | مساحة               | remain          | متبقية - باقية |
| officers     | ضباط                | pollution       | تلوث           |
| cage         | قفص                 | disappear       | يختفي          |
| special care | رعاية خاصة          | species         | انواع - فصائل  |
| attention    | انتباه              | dugong          | حيوان الأطوم   |
| challenges   | تحديات              | fishing net     | شبكة الصيد     |
| owner        | مالك                |                 |                |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |             | Past ماض    |  | Present مضارع |           | Past ماض  |  |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|--|---------------|-----------|-----------|--|
| hunt          | يصطاد       | hunted      |  | run           | يجري      | ran       |  |
| spray         | يرش         | sprayed     |  | catch         | يصطاد     | caught    |  |
| climb         | يتسلق       | climbed     |  | keep          | يحافظ على | kept      |  |
| exercise      | يتمرن-يتدرب | exercised   |  | go into       | يدخل الى  | went into |  |
| protect       | يحمي        | protected   |  | lie down      | يستلقي    | lay down  |  |
| avoid         | يتجنب       | avoided     |  | stand         | يقف       | stood     |  |
| pretend       | يتظاهر      | pretended   |  | choose        | يختار     | chose     |  |
| trick         | يخدع        | tricked     |  | write         | يكتب      | wrote     |  |
| disappear     | يختفي       | disappeared |  |               |           |           |  |

### Language in use

قواعد لغوية

#### Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين او شيئين او حيوانين الخ

#### Comparative forms with short adjectives. مقارنة الصفات القصيرة

اسم + er + than + اسم

نضيف لنهاية الصفة القصيرة er:

tall → taller clean → cleaner small → smaller

- Example: A giraffe is taller than a zebra.

لاحظ: نضع كلمة **than** في جملة المقارنة.

إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك بعده ساكن فاننا نضع الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف **er**:

big → bigger

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ **e** نضيف **r** الى الصفة:

safe → safer

- Bears are bigger than dogs.

- Aswan is safer than Cairo.

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **y** قبله حرف ساكن نحول الـ **y** الى **i** ثم نضيف **er**:

healthy → healthier



# Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Ashrqat is ..... years old.

**a** 7

**b** 8

**c** 9

**d** 10

2. She likes helping the .....

**a** hospital

**b** community

**c** school

**d** station

3. She volunteer to help in the .....

**a** kitchen

**b** hospital

**c** stadium

**d** park

4. We cleaned the streets and collect.....

**a** bottles

**b** money

**c** paper

**d** plastic

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. I use my tongue to.....

**a** touch

**b** hear

**c** smell

**d** taste

2. The monkey has a long .....

**a** trunk

**b** ear

**c** claw

**d** tail

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

healthier - cages - fresh - cares - owners

Pets need daily care from their ① ..... Dogs need exercise. Rabbits eat ② ..... vegetables, and they are ③ ..... than other animals. Birds need cleaner ④ ..... than other animals

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. They are endangered. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. They eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about .....  
**a** lions **b** monkeys  
**c** endangered animals **d** pollution
2. The Red Sea Dugong eats .....  
**a** sea grass **b** fish **c** whales **d** vegetables

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Mention two animals which are endangered.-----
4. Why are the Red Sea Dugong endangered?-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I ..... (**eats**) breakfast every morning.
2. The cat is ..... (**small**) than the dog.
3. Does he ..... (**walks**) to work every day?
4. She ..... (**read**) books in the library every day.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

yes the sun rises in the east. \_\_\_\_\_

**7** Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن :

## Helping your community

**last week - volunteered - collected**

\_\_\_\_\_

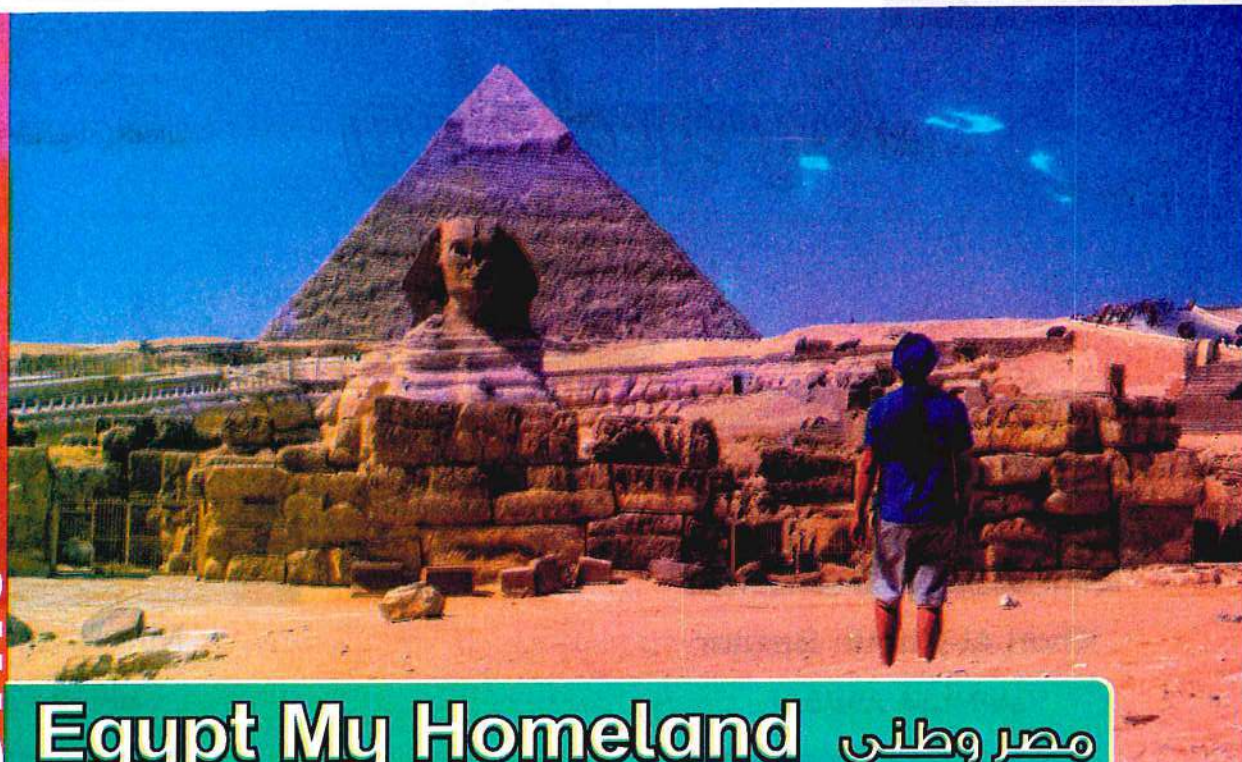
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



# Unit 4



## Egypt My Homeland مصر وطني

### Learning Outcomes

#### Speaking:

- Discuss in groups famous places in Egypt يناقش الطالب في مجموعات أماكن شهيرة في مصر
- Use prepositions of places to talk about different locations يستخدم الطالب حروف جر الأماكن للحديث عن مواقع مختلفة

#### Listening:

- Identify key information about a tourist attraction in a conversation يحدد الطالب معلومات أساسية عن معلم سياحي في محادثة
- Discriminate between the pronunciation of the /p/ and /b/sounds يميز الطالب بين نطق صوتي /p/ و /b/

#### Reading:

- Recognize descriptions of famous places يتعرف الطالب على أوصاف الأماكن الشهيرة
- Extract key information from travel leaflets يستخرج الطالب معلومات أساسية من كتيبات السفر
- Read numbers up to a billion يقرأ الطالب الأعداد حتى مليار

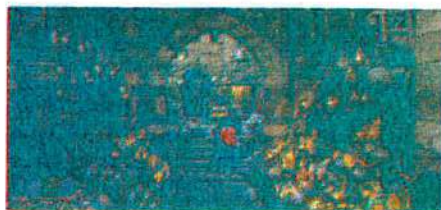
#### Writing:

- Design a basic travel leaflet يصمم الطالب منشوراً سياحياً بسيطاً
- Complete sentences using prepositions of place يكمل الطالب جملاً باستخدام حروف جر الأماكن
- Write a blog post about a famous place in Egypt يكتب الطالب منشوراً في مدونة عن مكان شهير في مصر
- Use prepositions of place to complete sentences يستخدم الطالب حروف جر الأماكن لإكمال الجمل



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar

سوق / بازار خان الخليلي



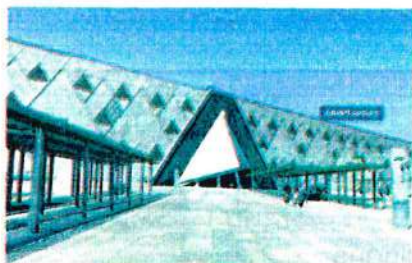
Pyramids

الأهرامات



Nile River

نهر النيل



Grand Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير

Places in  
Egypt

أماكن في مصر



Cairo Tower

برج القاهرة



Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري



Siwa Oasis

واحة سيوة

tour guide

مرشد سياحي

gift

هدية

tourist

سائح



## Other words كلمات أخرى

|         |             |          |         |
|---------|-------------|----------|---------|
| country | بلد         | market   | سوق     |
| top     | قمة/ أعلى   | explore  | يستكشف  |
| amazing | رائع / مذهش | treasure | كنز     |
| giant   | عملاق       | history  | التاريخ |
| stone   | حجر         | busy     | مزدحم   |
| near    | بالقرب من   | lots of  | كثير من |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

|                   |                  |                        |                   |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| Welcome to Egypt  | مرحبًا بك في مصر | That sounds fun!       | يبدو ممتعًا!      |
| Nice to meet you! | سعدت بلقائك      | full of                | ملء بـ            |
| take pictures     | يلتقط صورًا      | sail on the Nile River | يسبح في نهر النيل |
| ride a camel      | يركب جملاً       | talk about             | يتحدث عن          |
|                   |                  | work as                | يعمل كـ.          |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

| Present مضارع |      |
|---------------|------|
| visit         | يزور |
| sail          | يسبح |

Past ماضٍ

visited  
sailed

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |       |
|---------------|-------|
| build         | يبني  |
| meet          | يقابل |
| take          | يأخذ  |
| ride          | يركب  |
| find          | يجد   |

Past ماضٍ

built  
met  
took  
rode  
found

## Study the following

- The Siwa Oasis has lots of trees and water. واحة سيوة بها الكثير من الأشجار والماء.
- The Nile River is a very long river in Egypt. نهر النيل هو نهر طويل جدًا في مصر.
- The Cairo Tower is very tall. We can see Cairo from the top. برج القاهرة طويل جدًا يمكننا رؤية القاهرة من الأعلى.
- We went to the Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to buy gifts. ذهبنا إلى سوق خان الخليلي لشراء الهدايا.

## Unit 4 Egypt My Homeland

5 People used giant stones to build the pyramids.

استخدم الناس حجارة عملاقة لبناء الأهرامات.

6 This is my first time in Egypt.

هذه أول زيارة لي في مصر.

7 Tourists take many pictures at the pyramids.

يلتقط السياح الكثير من الصور عند الأهرامات.

8 Many people ride camels near the pyramids.

يركب الكثير من الناس الجمال بالقرب من الأهرامات.

9 We get water from the Nile River.

نحصل على الماء من نهر النيل.

10 The Grand Egyptian Museum has many treasures to see.

المتحف المصري الكبير يحتوي على العديد من الكنوز التي يمكن رؤيتها.

### "Exploring Egypt with Ali!"

Listen and read:

استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Ali and John are at the **Pyramids**<sup>(1)</sup> talking about Egypt's amazing places.

على وجون عند الأهرامات يتحدثان عن أماكن مصر المدهشة

Ali : Hi, I'm Ali! I work as a **tour guide**<sup>(2)</sup> in Egypt. Welcome to Egypt!

علي: مرحباً، أنا علي! أعمل مرشداً سياحياً في مصر. أهلاً بك في مصر!

John : Nice to meet you, Ali! I'm John. This is my first time in Egypt.

جون: سررتُ بلقائك يا علي! أنا جون. هذه أول زيارة لي إلى مصر.

Ali : You will like it here! The Pyramids are very nice. **Tourists**<sup>(3)</sup> take many pictures here.

علي: ستُحبك الزيارة هنا! الأهرامات جميلة جداً. يلتقط السياح الكثير من الصور هنا.

John : Great! Can I **ride a camel**<sup>(4)</sup>, too?

جون: رائع! هل يُمكنني ركوب الجمال أيضاً؟

Ali : Yes! Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!

علي: نعم! يركب الكثير من الناس الجمال بالقرب من الأهرامات. إنه أمر ممتع!

John : What can we visit after the Pyramids?

جون: ماذا يُمكننا زيارته بعد الأهرامات؟

Ali : Next, we can visit the **Grand Egyptian Museum**<sup>(5)</sup>. It has many **treasures**<sup>(6)</sup> to see, and **history**<sup>(7)</sup> too!

علي: بعد ذلك، يُمكننا زيارة المتحف المصري. فيه العديد من الكنوز والتاريخ أيضاً!

John : I love history! Are there more places to visit?

جون: أحب التاريخ! هل هناك أماكن أخرى للزيارة؟

Ali : Yes! We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some **gifts**<sup>(8)</sup>.

علي: نعم! يُمكننا الذهاب إلى خان الخليلي لشراء بعض الهدايا.

John : That sounds fun! هذا يبدو ممتعاً!



#### Arabic Meaning

- ١- الأهرامات
- ٢- مرشد سياحي
- ٣- السياح
- ٤- يركب جملاً
- ٥- المتحف المصري الكبير
- ٦- كنوز
- ٧- التاريخ
- ٨- هدايا



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Who is Omar?

- ☐ a A taxi driver      ☐ b A tourist      ☐ c A teacher      ☐ d A tour guide

2. What do they do at the Pyramids?

- ☐ a Swim      ☐ b Take pictures      ☐ c Fly kites      ☐ d Paint

3. What can you see in the Grand Egyptian Museum?

- ☐ a Camels      ☐ b Boats  
☐ c Treasures and history      ☐ d Gifts

4. Why do they want to go to Khan Al-Khalili?

- ☐ a To eat lunch      ☐ b To see animals  
☐ c To buy gifts      ☐ d To read books

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Khan Al-Khalili ..... is a busy market.

- ☐ a Museum      ☐ b Tower      ☐ c Bazaar      ☐ d Oasis

2. Tourists like to ..... camels near the Pyramids.

- ☐ a meet      ☐ b ride      ☐ c take      ☐ d build

3. Salma went to the mall to buy some .....

- ☐ a camels      ☐ b gifts      ☐ c markets      ☐ d museums

4. We can see Cairo from the top of the .....

- ☐ a Siwa Oasis      ☐ b Egyptian Museum  
☐ c Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar      ☐ d Cairo Tower

5. The ..... showed the tourists around the city.

- ☐ a tour guide      ☐ b doctor      ☐ c pilot      ☐ d mechanic

## Unit 4 Egypt My Homeland

6. I am reading a book about Egypt's ..... places like the Pyramids and the Grand Egyptian Museum.

- a** bad                      **b** long                      **c** amazing                      **d** horrible

7. Tourists visit Siwa ..... to learn about its history.

- a** Bazaar                      **b** Museum                      **c** Oasis                      **d** Market

8. Welcome ..... Egypt! We hope you enjoy your stay.

- a** at                      **b** for                      **c** of                      **d** to

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

in - get - trees - on - amazing

Siwa Oasis is a quiet place in Egypt. It has many ① ..... and water. We saw ② ..... views and met kind people. Later, we sailed ③ ..... the Nile River. The river is very long, and people ④ ..... water from it. We enjoyed every minute of our trip.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What can we visit after the Grand Egyptian Museum

-----

2. tourists take many pictures at the Pyramids

-----

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

"A place you want to visit in Egypt"

visit - stones - pictures

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



shopping mall

مركز تسوق



school

مدرسة



library

مكتبة (للقراءة)



Places

أماكن



post office

مكتب بريد



museum

متحف



hospital

مستشفى

city / town

مدينة

store

متجر / محل

student

طالب

teacher

مدرس

nurse

ممرضة

restaurant

مطعم

package

طرد

borrow

يستعير

doctor

طبيب

connected

متصل

letter

رسالة / خطاب

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|         |            |             |              |
|---------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| sick    | مريض       | living room | غرفة المعيشة |
| young   | صغار السن  | lamp        | مصباح        |
| wall    | حائط       | notebook    | كراسة        |
| toy car | سيارة لعبة |             |              |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر

|                |                |                           |                    |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| borrow books   | يستعير كتبًا   | at the post office        | في مكتب البريد     |
| feel better    | يشعر بتحسن     | help sick people          | يساعد المرضى       |
| stay connected | يبقى على اتصال | send letters and packages | يرسل رسائل وطرودًا |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present مضارع |        |
|---------------|--------|
| borrow        | يستعير |
| live          | يعيش   |
| talk          | يتحدث  |

### Past ماضٍ

|          |
|----------|
| borrowed |
| lived    |
| talked   |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |       |
|---------------|-------|
| send          | يرسل  |
| eat           | يأكل  |
| teach         | يدرّس |

### Past ماضٍ

|        |
|--------|
| sent   |
| ate    |
| taught |

## Study the following

1 Students go to school to learn and meet friends.

- يذهب الطلاب إلى المدرسة ليتعلموا ويقابلوا الأصدقاء.

2 The library has many books to read and borrow.

- تحتوي المكتبة على العديد من الكتب للقراءة والاستعارة.

3 Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

- يساعد الأطباء والممرضات المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن.

4 People send letters and packages to stay connected.

- يرسل الناس الرسائل و الطرود ليبقوا على اتصال.

5 The shopping mall has many stores and restaurants.

- يحتوى مركز التسوق على العديد من المتاجر والمطاعم.



## Read the text. What can people do at the post office

أقرأ النص ماذا يمكن أن يفعل الناس في مكتب البريد؟

استمع إلى النص:



## The Places We Go in Our City الأماكن التي نزرورها في مدينتنا

Our city<sup>(1)</sup> has many important<sup>(2)</sup> places that help people every day.

تضم مدينتنا العديد من الأماكن المهمة التي تساعد الناس يوميًا.

One important place is the school. Students go there to learn<sup>(3)</sup> and meet friends. Teachers help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow<sup>(4)</sup>.

أحد هذه الأماكن المهمة المدرسة حيث يذهب إليها الطلاب للتعلم ولقاء الأصدقاء. يُساعدهم المعلمون، وتحتوي المكتبة على العديد من الكتب للقراءة أو الاستعارة.

Another important place is the hospital<sup>(5)</sup>.

Doctors and nurses<sup>(6)</sup> help sick people<sup>(7)</sup> feel better. Next to the hospital is the post office<sup>(8)</sup>, where people send letters<sup>(9)</sup> and packages<sup>(10)</sup> to stay connected<sup>(11)</sup>.

ومن الأماكن المهمة أيضًا المستشفى. يُساعد الأطباء والممرضون المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن. بجوار المستشفى يقع مكتب البريد، حيث يُرسل الناس الرسائل والطرود للبقاء على اتصال.

The shopping mall<sup>(12)</sup> has many stores<sup>(13)</sup> and restaurants<sup>(14)</sup>.

People buy things and eat there. Behind it is a museum with treasures that teach us about our history.

يضم مركز التسوق العديد من المتاجر والمطاعم. يتسوق الناس ويتناولون الطعام هناك. وخلفه متحف مليء بالكنوز التي نُعرفنا على تاريخنا.

These places make our city a great place to live.

هذه الأماكن تجعل مدينتنا مكانًا رائعًا للعيش.

## Arabic Meaning

- ١- مدينة
- ٢- هام/مهم
- ٣- يتعلم
- ٤- يستعير
- ٥- مستشفى
- ٦- ممرضات
- ٧- المرضى
- ٨- مكتب البريد
- ٩- رسائل/خطابات
- ١٠- طرود
- ١١- متصل
- ١٢- مركز تسوق
- ١٣- محلات
- ١٤- مطاعم

Prepositions of Place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Prepositions of place show **where** things are.

تستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتوضيح مكان شيء أو شخص بالنسبة لشيء آخر.

1 **in** في The cat is **in** the box.



2 **on** على The cat is **on** the box.



3 **in front of** أمام The cat is **in front of** the box.



4 **behind** خلف The cat is **behind** the box.



5 **next to** بجانب The cat is **next to** the box.



6 **between** بين في المنتصف (بين شيئين)



The cat is **between** the boxes.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

- The lamp is ..... (**front**) to the bed.
- The bag is in ..... (**next**) the two chairs.
- The plant is ..... (**front**) of the window.
- The book is ..... (**in**) the shelf رف .
- The toys are ..... (**on**) the box. They are inside it.
- The rabbit was hiding ..... (**between**) the tree. I couldn't see it.



Look and read.

انظروا وقروا.

The World of Big Numbers

A billion is a thousand million

المليار هو الف مليون

China has one of the world's largest populations. In 1980, the population of China reached about 1,000,000,000, which means 1 billion people.



الصين من أكبر دول العالم من حيث عدد السكان. في عام ١٩٨٠، بلغ عدد سكانها حوالي ١,٠٠٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠، أي ما يعادل مليار نسمة.

1 Read and complete using the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل باستخدام الكلمات من الاطار.

thousand - hundred million - one - hundred - million

1,000,000,000

billions ..... hundred thousands ..... ten millions ..... ten thousands ..... ten

2 Read and complete.

اقرأ واكمل.

If we need to say the number 8,199,590,341, we say "Eight ..... , one hundred ninety-nine ..... , five hundred ninety ..... , three ..... and forty-one".



# Pronunciation

- في هذا الدرس سنتعلم الفرق في النطق بين الحرفين "p" و "b" :

- نطق حرف **p** نضغط على الشفتين بقوة مع اندفاع الهواء من الفم اما حرف **b** فهو يشبه نطق

حرف الباء في اللغة العربية حيث لا يندفع هواء من الفم عند نطقه :

استمع إلى المفردات :



pond بحيرة / بركة



pan مقلاة



pear كمثرى



peak قمة الجبل



bin سلة مهملات



ban حظر / منع



bear دب



bat خفاش

## Study the following

- 1 The ducks swim in the pond.
- 2 Mom cooks eggs in the pan.
- 3 The bat flies at night.
- 4 We throw our trash in the bin.

- يسبح البط في البركة / البحيرة.

- تطبخ أمي البيض في المقلاة.

- يطير الخفاش في الليل.

- نرمى القمامة في سلة المهملات.

### Checkup Exercises ✓

Choose the correct answer:

1. There is snow on the mountain ..... (beak / peak).
2. The ..... (bear / pear) lives in the forest.
3. She put oil in the ..... (ban / pan) before cooking.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I borrowed a story from the .....  
 a post office      b hospital      c library      d shopping mall
2. Doctors help people who are .....  
 a sick      b good      c fine      d well
3. We bought new clothes from the .....  
 a school      b shopping mall      c library      d restaurant
4. I always go to the ..... to send letters and packages to my cousins.  
 a museum      b hospital      c stores      d post office
5. Museums teach us about .....  
 a math      b science      c history      d Arabic

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hospital - borrow - letters - school - litter

In our town, everyone visits different places. In the morning, children carry their bags and go to <sup>1</sup> ..... to study and learn new things. After school, some go to the library to <sup>2</sup> ..... books. If someone feels sick, they can go to the <sup>3</sup> ..... Near the hospital is the post office, where people send important <sup>4</sup> .....

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Salma is a young student who lives in a small town. Every morning, she walks to school with her notebook and bag. Her teacher is kind and helps her learn new things. After class, Salma goes to the library to borrow books. She loves reading about plants and animals. The library is quiet, and the walls have big posters. Later, she talks to her friend about the book. Salma loves spending her day learning and reading.

## Unit 4 Egypt My Homeland

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is about .....  
**a** playing games **b** reading book  
**c** Salma's day **d** going shopping
2. Salma goes to the ..... after school.  
**a** home **b** park **c** mall **d** library

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- ### 3. Who helps Salma learn new things?

[illegible]

4. What does Salma do with her friend?

1000 900 800 700 600 500 400 300 200 100 0 0.0 0.1 0.2 0.3 0.4 0.5 0.6 0.7 0.8 0.9 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6 1.7 1.8 1.9 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 2.6 2.7 2.8 2.9 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 3.6 3.7 3.8 3.9 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 4.7 4.8 4.9 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6 5.7 5.8 5.9 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 6.7 6.8 6.9 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 7.6 7.7 7.8 7.9 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5 8.6 8.7 8.8 8.9 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7 9.8 9.9 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 10.4 10.5 10.6 10.7 10.8 10.9 11.0 11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4 11.5 11.6 11.7 11.8 11.9 12.0 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4 12.5 12.6 12.7 12.8 12.9 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 13.5 13.6 13.7 13.8 13.9 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 14.7 14.8 14.9 15.0 15.1 15.2 15.3 15.4 15.5 15.6 15.7 15.8 15.9 16.0 16.1 16.2 16.3 16.4 16.5 16.6 16.7 16.8 16.9 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 17.4 17.5 17.6 17.7 17.8 17.9 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 18.4 18.5 18.6 18.7 18.8 18.9 19.0 19.1 19.2 19.3 19.4 19.5 19.6 19.7 19.8 19.9 20.0 20.1 20.2 20.3 20.4 20.5 20.6 20.7 20.8 20.9 21.0 21.1 21.2 21.3 21.4 21.5 21.6 21.7 21.8 21.9 22.0 22.1 22.2 22.3 22.4 22.5 22.6 22.7 22.8 22.9 23.0 23.1 23.2 23.3 23.4 23.5 23.6 23.7 23.8 23.9 24.0 24.1 24.2 24.3 24.4 24.5 24.6 24.7 24.8 24.9 25.0 25.1 25.2 25.3 25.4 25.5 25.6 25.7 25.8 25.9 26.0 26.1 26.2 26.3 26.4 26.5 26.6 26.7 26.8 26.9 27.0 27.1 27.2 27.3 27.4 27.5 27.6 27.7 27.8 27.9 28.0 28.1 28.2 28.3 28.4 28.5 28.6 28.7 28.8 28.9 29.0 29.1 29.2 29.3 29.4 29.5 29.6 29.7 29.8 29.9 30.0 30.1 30.2 30.3 30.4 30.5 30.6 30.7 30.8 30.9 31.0 31.1 31.2 31.3 31.4 31.5 31.6 31.7 31.8 31.9 32.0 32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 32.9 33.0 33.1 33.2 33.3 33.4 33.5 33.6 33.7 33.8 33.9 34.0 34.1 34.2 34.3 34.4 34.5 34.6 34.7 34.8 34.9 35.0 35.1 35.2 35.3 35.4 35.5 35.6 35.7 35.8 35.9 36.0 36.1 36.2 36.3 36.4 36.5 36.6 36.7 36.8 36.9 37.0 37.1 37.2 37.3 37.4 37.5 37.6 37.7 37.8 37.9 38.0 38.1 38.2 38.3 38.4 38.5 38.6 38.7 38.8 38.9 39.0 39.1 39.2 39.3 39.4 39.5 39.6 39.7 39.8 39.9 40.0 40.1 40.2 40.3 40.4 40.5 40.6 40.7 40.8 40.9 41.0 41.1 41.2 41.3 41.4 41.5 41.6 41.7 41.8 41.9 42.0 42.1 42.2 42.3 42.4 42.5 42.6 42.7 42.8 42.9 43.0 43.1 43.2 43.3 43.4 43.5 43.6 43.7 43.8 43.9 44.0 44.1 44.2 44.3 44.4 44.5 44.6 44.7 44.8 44.9 45.0 45.1 45.2 45.3 45.4 45.5 45.6 45.7 45.8 45.9 46.0 46.1 46.2 46.3 46.4 46.5 46.6 46.7 46.8 46.9 47.0 47.1 47.2 47.3 47.4 47.5 47.6 47.7 47.8 47.9 48.0 48.1 48.2 48.3 48.4 48.5 48.6 48.7 48.8 48.9 49.0 49.1 49.2 49.3 49.4 49.5 49.6 49.7 49.8 49.9 50.0 50.1 50.2 50.3 50.4 50.5 50.6 50.7 50.8 50.9 51.0 51.1 51.2 51.3 51.4 51.5 51.6 51.7 51.8 51.9 52.0 52.1 52.2 52.3 52.4 52.5 52.6 52.7 52.8 52.9 53.0 53.1 53.2 53.3 53.4 53.5 53.6 53.7 53.8 53.9 54.0 54.1 54.2 54.3 54.4 54.5 54.6 54.7 54.8 54.9 55.0 55.1 55.2 55.3 55.4 55.5 55.6 55.7 55.8 55.9 56.0 56.1 56.2 56.3 56.4 56.5 56.6 56.7 56.8 56.9 57.0 57.1 57.2 57.3 57.4 57.5 57.6 57.7 57.8 57.9 58.0 58.1 58.2 58.3 58.4 58.5 58.6 58.7 58.8 58.9 59.0 59.1 59.2 59.3 59.4 59.5 59.6 59.7 59.8 59.9 60.0 60.1 60.2 60.3 60.4 60.5 60.6 60.7 60.8 60.9 61.0 61.1 61.2 61.3 61.4 61.5 61.6 61.7 61.8 61.9 62.0 62.1 62.2 62.3 62.4 62.5 62.6 62.7 62.8 62.9 63.0 63.1 63.2 63.3 63.4 63.5 63.6 63.7 63.8 63.9 64.0 64.1 64.2 64.3 64.4 64.5 64.6 64.7 64.8 64.9 65.0 65.1 65.2 65.3 65.4 65.5 65.6 65.7 65.8 65.9 66.0 66.1 66.2 66.3 66.4 66.5 66.6 66.7 66.8 66.9 67.0 67.1 67.2 67.3 67.4 67.5 67.6 67.7 67.8 67.9 68.0 68.1 68.2 68.3 68.4 68.5 68.6 68.7 68.8 68.9 69.0 69.1 69.2 69.3 69.4 69.5 69.6 69.7 69.8 69.9 70.0 70.1 70.2 70.3 70.4 70.5 70.6 70.7 70.8 70.9 71.0 71.1 71.2 71.3 71.4 71.5 71.6 71.7 71.8 71.9 72.0 72.1 72.2 72.3 72.4 72.5 72.6 72.7 72.8 72.9 73.0 73.1 73.2 73.3 73.4 73.5 73.6 73.7 73.8 73.9 74.0 74.1 74.2 74.3 74.4 74.5 74.6 74.7 74.8 74.9 75.0 75.1 75.2 75.3 75.4 75.5 75.6 75.7 75.8 75.9 76.0 76.1 76.2 76.3 76.4 76.5 76.6 76.7 76.8 76.9 77.0 77.1 77.2 77.3 77.4 77.5 77.6 77.7 77.8 77.9 78.0 78.1 78.2 78.3 78.4 78.5 78.6 78.7 78.8 78.9 79.0 79.1 79.2 79.3 79.4 79.5 79.6 79.7 79.8 79.9 80.0 80.1 80.2 80.3 80.4 80.5 80.6 80.7 80.8 80.9 81.0 81.1 81.2 81.3 81.4 81.5 81.6 81.7 81.8 81.9 82.0 82.1 82.2 82.3 82.4 82.5 82.6 82.7 82.8 82.9 8

**4** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. The chair is ..... (**next**) the desk.
2. The ball is ..... (**in**) the table. It is not under it.
3. The whiteboard is ..... (**front**) of the children.
4. The park is ..... (**next**) the school and the hospital.
5. I found my ball ..... (**on**) the garden.
6. The rabbit ran ..... (**between**) the tree.
7. Sara put the glass next ..... (**at**) the plate.
8. My keys were ..... (**next**) my books.
9. The bus stopped in front ..... (**out**) my home.
10. There is a big clock ..... (**in**) the wall above the TV.

**5** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن :

مجاہد عنہ آخر الوحدة

### “Your favorite place”

shopping mall - stores - weekend

|      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1997 | 1998 | 1999 | 2000 | 2001 | 2002 | 2003 | 2004 | 2005 | 2006 | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 | 2022 | 2023 | 2024 | 2025 | 2026 | 2027 | 2028 | 2029 | 2030 | 2031 | 2032 | 2033 | 2034 | 2035 | 2036 | 2037 | 2038 | 2039 | 2040 | 2041 | 2042 | 2043 | 2044 | 2045 | 2046 | 2047 | 2048 | 2049 | 2050 | 2051 | 2052 | 2053 | 2054 | 2055 | 2056 | 2057 | 2058 | 2059 | 2060 | 2061 | 2062 | 2063 | 2064 | 2065 | 2066 | 2067 | 2068 | 2069 | 2070 | 2071 | 2072 | 2073 | 2074 | 2075 | 2076 | 2077 | 2078 | 2079 | 2080 | 2081 | 2082 | 2083 | 2084 | 2085 | 2086 | 2087 | 2088 | 2089 | 2090 | 2091 | 2092 | 2093 | 2094 | 2095 | 2096 | 2097 | 2098 | 2099 | 2100 | 2101 | 2102 | 2103 | 2104 | 2105 | 2106 | 2107 | 2108 | 2109 | 2110 | 2111 | 2112 | 2113 | 2114 | 2115 | 2116 | 2117 | 2118 | 2119 | 2120 | 2121 | 2122 | 2123 | 2124 | 2125 | 2126 | 2127 | 2128 | 2129 | 2130 | 2131 | 2132 | 2133 | 2134 | 2135 | 2136 | 2137 | 2138 | 2139 | 2140 | 2141 | 2142 | 2143 | 2144 | 2145 | 2146 | 2147 | 2148 | 2149 | 2150 | 2151 | 2152 | 2153 | 2154 | 2155 | 2156 | 2157 | 2158 | 2159 | 2160 | 2161 | 2162 | 2163 | 2164 | 2165 | 2166 | 2167 | 2168 | 2169 | 2170 | 2171 | 2172 | 2173 | 2174 | 2175 | 2176 | 2177 | 2178 | 2179 | 2180 | 2181 | 2182 | 2183 | 2184 | 2185 | 2186 | 2187 | 2188 | 2189 | 2190 | 2191 | 2192 | 2193 | 2194 | 2195 | 2196 | 2197 | 2198 | 2199 | 2200 | 2201 | 2202 | 2203 | 2204 | 2205 | 2206 | 2207 | 2208 | 2209 | 2210 | 2211 | 2212 | 2213 | 2214 | 2215 | 2216 | 2217 | 2218 | 2219 | 2220 | 2221 | 2222 | 2223 | 2224 | 2225 | 2226 | 2227 | 2228 | 2229 | 2230 | 2231 | 2232 | 2233 | 2234 | 2235 | 2236 | 2237 | 2238 | 2239 | 2240 | 2241 | 2242 | 2243 | 2244 | 2245 | 2246 | 2247 | 2248 | 2249 | 2250 | 2251 | 2252 | 2253 | 2254 | 2255 | 2256 | 2257 | 2258 | 2259 | 2260 | 2261 | 2262 | 2263 | 2264 | 2265 | 2266 | 2267 | 2268 | 2269 | 2270 | 2271 | 2272 | 2273 | 2274 | 2275 | 2276 | 2277 | 2278 | 2279 | 2280 | 2281 | 2282 | 2283 | 2284 | 2285 | 2286 | 2287 | 2288 | 2289 | 2290 | 2291 | 2292 | 2293 | 2294 | 2295 | 2296 | 2297 | 2298 | 2299 | 2300 | 2301 | 2302 | 2303 | 2304 | 2305 | 2306 | 2307 | 2308 | 2309 | 2310 | 2311 | 2312 | 2313 | 2314 | 2315 | 2316 | 2317 | 2318 | 2319 | 2320 | 2321 | 2322 | 2323 | 2324 | 2325 | 2326 | 2327 | 2328 | 2329 | 2330 | 2331 | 2332 | 2333 | 2334 | 2335 | 2336 | 2337 | 2338 | 2339 | 2340 | 2341 | 2342 | 2343 | 2344 | 2345 | 2346 | 2347 | 2348 | 2349 | 2350 | 2351 | 2352 | 2353 | 2354 | 2355 | 2356 | 2357 | 2358 | 2359 | 2360 | 2361 | 2362 | 2363 | 2364 | 2365 | 2366 | 2367 | 2368 | 2369 | 2370 | 2371 | 2372 | 2373 | 2374 | 2375 | 2376 | 2377 | 2378 | 2379 | 2380 | 2381 | 2382 | 2383 | 2384 | 2385 | 2386 | 2387 | 2388 | 2389 | 2390 | 2391 | 2392 | 2393 | 2394 | 2395 | 2396 | 2397 | 2398 | 2399 | 2400 | 2401 | 2402 | 2403 | 2404 | 2405 | 2406 | 2407 | 2408 | 2409 | 2410 | 2411 | 2412 | 2413 | 2414 | 2415 | 2416 | 2417 | 2418 | 2419 | 2420 | 2421 | 2422 | 2423 | 2424 | 2425 | 2426 | 2427 | 2428 | 2429 | 2430 | 2431 | 2432 | 2433 | 2434 | 2435 | 2436 | 2437 | 2438 | 2439 | 2440 | 2441 | 2442 | 2443 | 2444 | 2445 | 2446 | 2447 | 2448 | 2449 | 2450 |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

1999 2000 2001 2002 2003 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008 2009 2010 2011 2012 2013 2014 2015 2016 2017 2018 2019 2020 2021 2022 2023 2024 2025 2026 2027 2028 2029 2030 2031 2032 2033 2034 2035 2036 2037 2038 2039 2040 2041 2042 2043 2044 2045 2046 2047 2048 2049 2050 2051 2052 2053 2054 2055 2056 2057 2058 2059 2060 2061 2062 2063 2064 2065 2066 2067 2068 2069 2070 2071 2072 2073 2074 2075 2076 2077 2078 2079 2080 2081 2082 2083 2084 2085 2086 2087 2088 2089 2090 2091 2092 2093 2094 2095 2096 2097 2098 2099 2100 2101 2102 2103 2104 2105 2106 2107 2108 2109 2110 2111 2112 2113 2114 2115 2116 2117 2118 2119 2120 2121 2122 2123 2124 2125 2126 2127 2128 2129 2130 2131 2132 2133 2134 2135 2136 2137 2138 2139 2140 2141 2142 2143 2144 2145 2146 2147 2148 2149 2150 2151 2152 2153 2154 2155 2156 2157 2158 2159 2160 2161 2162 2163 2164 2165 2166 2167 2168 2169 2170 2171 2172 2173 2174 2175 2176 2177 2178 2179 2180 2181 2182 2183 2184 2185 2186 2187 2188 2189 2190 2191 2192 2193 2194 2195 2196 2197 2198 2199 2200 2201 2202 2203 2204 2205 2206 2207 2208 2209 2210 2211 2212 2213 2214 2215 2216 2217 2218 2219 2220 2221 2222 2223 2224 2225 2226 2227 2228 2229 2230 2231 2232 2233 2234 2235 2236 2237 2238 2239 2240 2241 2242 2243 2244 2245 2246 2247 2248 2249 2250 2251 2252 2253 2254 2255 2256 2257 2258 2259 2260 2261 2262 2263 2264 2265 2266 2267 2268 2269 2270 2271 2272 2273 2274 2275 2276 2277 2278 2279 2280 2281 2282 2283 2284 2285 2286 2287 2288 2289 2290 2291 2292 2293 2294 2295 2296 2297 2298 2299 2300 2301 2302 2303 2304 2305 2306 2307 2308 2309 2310 2311 2312 2313 2314 2315 2316 2317 2318 2319 2320 2321 2322 2323 2324 2325 2326 2327 2328 2329 2330 2331 2332 2333 2334 2335 2336 2337 2338 2339 2340 2341 2342 2343 2344 2345 2346 2347 2348 2349 2350 2351 2352 2353 2354 2355 2356 2357 2358 2359 2360 2361 2362 2363 2364 2365 2366 2367 2368 2369 2370 2371 2372 2373 2374 2375 2376 2377 2378 2379 2380 2381 2382 2383 2384 2385 2386 2387 2388 2389 2390 2391 2392 2393 2394 2395 2396 2397 2398 2399 2400 2401 2402 2403 2404 2405 2406 2407 2408 2409 2410 2411 2412 2413 2414 2415 2416 2417 2418 2419 2420 2421 2422 2423 2424 2425 2426 2427 2428 2429 2430 2431 2432 2433 2434 2435 2436 2437 2438 2439 2440 2441 2442 2443 2444 2445 2446 2447 2448 2449 2450 2451 2452 2453 2454 2455 2456 2457 2458 2459 2460 2461 2462 2463 2464 2465 2466 2467 2468 2469 2470 2471 2472 2473 2474 2475 2476 2477 2478 2479 2480 2481 2482 2483 2484 2485 2486 2487 2488 2489 2490 2491 2492 2493 2494 2495 2496 2497 2498 2499 2500 2501 2502 2503 2504 2505 2506 2507 2508 2509 2510 2511 2512 2513 2514 2515 2516 2517 2518 2519 2520 2521 2522 2523 2524 2525 2526 2527 2528 2529 2530 2531 2532 2533 2534 2535 2536 2537 2538 2539 2540 2541 2542 2543 2544 2545 2546 2547 2548 2549 2550 2551 2552 2553 2554 2555 2556 2557 2558 2559 2560 2561 2562 2563 2564 2565 2566 2567 2568 2569 2570 2571 2572 2573 2574 2575 2576 2577 2578 2579 2580 2581 2582 2583 2584 2585 2586 2587 2588 2589 2590 2591 2592 2593 2594 2595 2596 2597 2598 2599 2600 2601 2602 2603 2604 2605 2606 2607 2608 2609 2610 2611 2612 2613 2614 2615 2616 2617 2618 2619 2620 2621 2622 2623 2624 2625 2626 2627 2628 2629 2630 2631 2632 2633 2634 2635 2636 2637 2638 2639 2640 2641 2642 2643 2644 2645 2646 2647 2648 2649 2650 2651 2652 2653 2654 2655 2656 2657 2658 2659 2660 2661 2662 2663 2664 2665 2666 2667 2668 2669 2670 2671 2672 2673 2674 2675 2676 2677 2678 2679 2680 2681 2682 2683 2684 2685 2686 2687 2688 2689 2690 2691 2692 2693 2694 2695 2696 2697 2698 2699 2700 2701 2702 2703 2704 2705 2706 2707 2708 2709 2710 2711 2712 2713 2714 2715 2716 2717 2718 2719 2720 2721 2722 2723 2724 2725 2726 2727 2728 2729 2730 2731 2732 2733 2734 2735 2736 2737 2738 2739 2740 2741 2742 2743 2744 2745 2746 2747 2748 2749 2750 2751 2752 2753 2754 2755 2756 2757 2758 2759 2760 2761 2762 2763 2764 2765 2766 2767 2768 2769 2770 2771 2772 2773 2774 2775 2776 2777 2778 2779 2780 2781 2782 2783 2784 2785 2786 2787 2788 2789 2790 2791 2792 2793 2794 2795 2796 2797 2798 2799 2800 2801 2802 2803 2804 2805 2806 2807 2808 2809 2810 2811 2812 2813 2814 2815 2816 2817



# Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                        |                             |             |               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| blog post              | مدونة                       | adventure   | مغامرة        |
| visit                  | زيارة                       | plants      | نباتات        |
| St. Catherine Mountain | جبل سانت كاترين             | salt Lake   | بحيرة الملح   |
| South Sinai            | جنوب سيناء                  | sweet dates | تمر           |
| Egypt                  | مصر                         | desert      | الصحراء       |
| fun                    | مرح                         | local food  | الطعام المحلي |
| colorful               | كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان | olive oil   | زيت الزيتون   |
| rock                   | صخرة                        | Daytime     | النهار        |
| old monastery          | دير قديم                    | Night time  | الليل         |
| nature                 | الطبيعة                     |             |               |

## Other words

كلمات أخرى

|         |              |            |             |
|---------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| warm    | دافئ         | historical | تاريخي      |
| cold    | بارد         | early      | مبكرًا      |
| because | لأن          | rainy      | ممطر        |
| popular | شعبي / مشهور | fresh      | طازج        |
| visitor | زائر         | excellent  | ممتاز       |
| clothes | ملابس        | price      | سعر         |
| natural | طبيعي        | summer     | الصيف       |
| north   | شمال         | jacket     | جاكت (معطف) |
| weather | الطقس        | book       | يحجز        |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

|                |                       |                         |                        |
|----------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| along the way  | على طول / بطول الطريق | enjoy the natural world | يستمتع بالعالم الطبيعي |
| at the top     | على القمة             | take photos             | يلتقط صورًا            |
| in the morning | في الصباح             | see sunset              | يشاهد غروب الشمس       |

## Conjugation of verbs

لُصْرِيْقَاتِ الْأَفْعَالِ

### Regular verbs

أَفْعَالٌ مُنْتَظِمَةٌ

### Irregular verbs

أَفْعَالٌ غَيْرُ مُنْتَظِمَةٍ

| Present | مضارع |
|---------|-------|
| climb   | يتسلق |
| book    | يحجز  |

| Past    | ماضٍ |
|---------|------|
| climbed |      |
| booked  |      |

| Present | مضارع       |
|---------|-------------|
| wake up | يستيقظ      |
| wear    | يرتدي       |
| swim    | يسبح / يعوم |
| bring   | يحضر        |

| Past    | ماضٍ |
|---------|------|
| woke up |      |
| wore    |      |
| swam    |      |
| brought |      |

## Study the following

- 1 Tourists wear warm clothes because it's cold.** يرتدي السياح ملابس دافئة لأن الجو بارد.
- 2 Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants.** على طول الطريق، يرون صخوراً ملونة ونباتات صغيرة.
- 3 At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.** عند القمة، يزورون الدير القديم ويتعرفون على تاريخه.
- 4 St. Catherine is a popular place for nature and adventure.** سانت كاترين مكان مشهور بالطبيعة والمغامرة.
- 5 People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.** يمكن للناس التعرف على التاريخ والاستمتاع بجمال الطبيعة.





## Writing

### How to write a good blog كيفية كتابة مدونة

1- Clear title

١- اختر عنوان جيد

2- Writer's name

٢- اذكر اسم الكاتب

ابدأ ب اسم الكاتب + By

3- Date

٣- اذكر التاريخ

4- Pictures/ Drawing

٤- أضف صورة أو رسمة

5- Interesting details

٥- أضف معلومات شيقة عن الموضوع

6- Descriptive words

٦- استخدم كلمات وصفية

الكلمات الوصفية يجب أن تشمل وصف كامل للمكان من حيث الشكل، الرائحة، الاصوات، الشعور بحيث تجعل القارئ يتخيل المكان

### Read Tarek's blog post about St. Catherine Mountain.

استمع إلى النص: اقرأ مدونة طارق عن جبل سانت كاترين.



### A Visit<sup>(1)</sup> to St. Catherine Mountain

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain<sup>(2)</sup> in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb<sup>(3)</sup>, and wear warm clothes because it's cold.



Along the way<sup>(4)</sup>, they see colorful rocks<sup>(5)</sup> and small plants, and some take pictures.

At the top<sup>(6)</sup>, they visit the old monastery<sup>(7)</sup> and learn about its history.

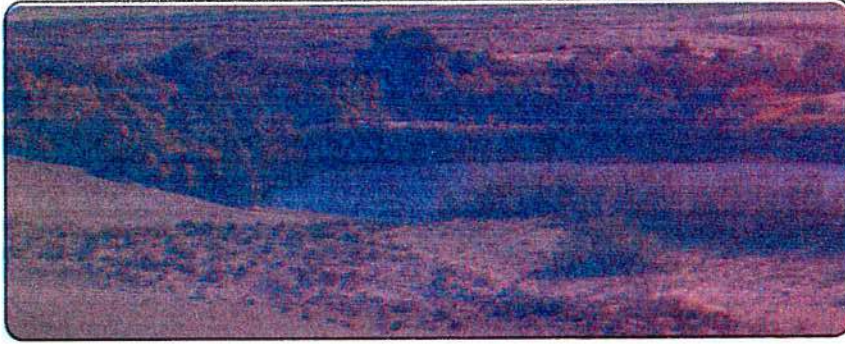
St. Catherine is a popular<sup>(8)</sup> place for nature<sup>(9)</sup>, adventure<sup>(10)</sup>, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

#### Arabic Meaning

١. زيارة
٢. جبل سانت كاترين
٣. يتسلق
٤. بطول الطريق
٥. صخور ملونة
٦. على القمة
٧. الدير القديم
٨. مشهور
٩. الطبيعة
١٠. المغامرة

Look and read the leaflet about the Siwa Oasis.

استمع إلى النص: انظروا أقرأ المنشور عن واحة سيوة.



Arabic Meaning

١. طعام محلي
٢. بحيرة الملح
٣. صور
٤. الصحراء
٥. شروق الشمس
٦. تمر
٧. زيت الزيتون
٨. سعر
٩. النهار
١٠. الليل
١١. يحضر
١٢. يحجز

1 Welcome to the Siwa Oasis!

2 PLACES TO SEE

LOCAL FOOD (1)

WHAT TO WEAR



4 Salt Lake (2)  
swim and take photos (3)  
Desert (4)  
see sunset (5)

Sweet dates (6)  
fresh from the trees  
Good olive oil (7)  
excellent price (8)

Daytime (9)  
summer clothes  
Night time (10)  
bring (11) a jacket

5 Book (12) now: ☎ +20106006397

✉ siwa@trip.com

How to make a leaflet كيف تصمم منشورًا

1 نبدأ المنشور بعنوان رئيسي (Main heading)

1 Welcome to the Siwa Oasis!

2 نضع عناوين فرعية (Sub-heading)

2 PLACES TO SEE - LOCAL FOOD - WHAT TO WEAR

3 نضيف صورة أو رسمة (image) كما هو موضح بالمنشور السابق

4 وصف تفصيلي يشجع على الذهاب للمكان ويقدم نصائح حول ما يمكن توقعه (detailed description)

Salt Lake  
swim and take photos  
Desert  
see sunset

5 الدعوة لاتخاذ إجراء (call to action)

Book now: +20106006397

siwa@trip.com



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I wrote a ..... about my trip to South Sinai.  
☐ a prize                      ☐ b blog post                      ☐ c rock                      ☐ d history
2. Many tourists come to Egypt for .....  
☐ a adventure                      ☐ b night time                      ☐ c sunset                      ☐ d dessert
3. In the daytime, it's hot in the .....  
☐ a beach                      ☐ b desert                      ☐ c monastery                      ☐ d sea
4. Koshari is a/an ..... food in Egypt.  
☐ a fun                      ☐ b historical                      ☐ c local                      ☐ d care
5. I bought some ..... fruit from the market.  
☐ a old                      ☐ b warm                      ☐ c cold                      ☐ d fresh
6. Don't forget to take a jacket, it's ..... at night.  
☐ a warm                      ☐ b hot                      ☐ c fresh                      ☐ d cold
7. You can ..... your tickets online.  
☐ a book                      ☐ b see                      ☐ c enjoy                      ☐ d swim
8. We visited an old ..... and learned about its history.  
☐ a monastery                      ☐ b nature                      ☐ c plants                      ☐ d adventure
9. We visited the Salt Lake and ..... photos.  
☐ a brought                      ☐ b swam                      ☐ c took                      ☐ d wore
10. In the desert, people can sit under the stars and enjoy the ..... world.  
☐ a natural                      ☐ b salt                      ☐ c set                      ☐ d price

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

dates - desert - cold - book - salt

Many tourists visit Egypt in the summer. They ① ..... trips to see the Salt Lake and enjoy the fresh air. At daytime, they walk in the ② ..... , and at night time, they wear a jacket because it gets ③ ..... . They love tasting local food like sweet ④ .....

**3 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. along the way we saw camels and goats

2. St. catherine Mountain is in South Sinai

**4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

"A place in Egypt"

popular - wear - dates



# Review



on Unit 4

## Places in Egypt أماكن في مصر



**Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar**

سوق / بازار خان الخليلي



**Nile River**

نهر النيل



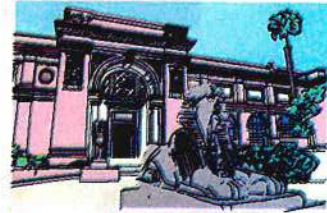
**Grand Egyptian Museum**

المتحف المصري الكبير



**Pyramids**

الأهرامات



**Egyptian Museum**

المتحف المصري



**Cairo Tower**

برج القاهرة



**Siwa Oasis**

واحة سيوة

tour guide

tourist

مرشد سياحي

سائح

gift

هدية

Places

أماكن



shopping mall

مركز تسوق



school

مدرسة



library

مكتبة (للقراءة)



post office

مكتب بريد



museum

متحف



hospital

مستشفى

blog post

مدونة

adventure

مغامرة

visit

زيارة

plants

نباتات

St. Catherine Mountain جبل سانت كاترين

salt Lake

بحيرة الملح

South Sinai جنوب سيناء

sweet dates

تمر

Egypt مصر

desert

الصحراء

fun مرح

local food

الطعام المحلي

colorful كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان

olive oil

زيت الزيتون

rock صخرة

Daytime

النهار

old monastery دير قديم

Night time

الليل

nature الطبيعة



# Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع | Past ماضٍ | Present مضارع  | Past ماضٍ |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| visit يزور    | visited   | build يبني     | built     |
| sail يبحر     | sailed    | meet يقابل     | met       |
| borrow يستعير | borrowed  | ride يركب      | rode      |
| climb يتسلق   | climbed   | send يرسل      | sent      |
| book يحجز     | booked    | teach يدرس     | taught    |
|               |           | wake up يستيقظ | woke up   |
|               |           | wear يرتدي     | wore      |
|               |           | bring يحضر     | brought   |

## Language in use

قواعد لغوية

### Prepositions of Place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Prepositions of place show **where** things are.

تستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتوضيح مكان شيء أو شخص بالنسبة لشيء آخر.

1 **in** في The cat is **in** the box.



2 **on** على The cat is **on** the box.



3 **in front of** أمام The cat is **in front of** the box.



4 **behind** خلف The cat is **behind** the box.



5 **next to** بجانب The cat is **next to** the box.



6 **between** بين (بين شيئين) في المنتصف



The cat is **between** the boxes.



## Answers to Paragraphs

1

### Lesson 1

#### A place you want to visit in Egypt

I want to visit the Pyramids. The Pyramids are very nice. People used giant stones to build them. I can take pictures and ride camels there.

2

### Lessons 2&3

#### Your favorite place

My favorite place is the shopping mall. It has many stores and restaurants. I always go there on the weekend. I buy things and eat there.

3

### Lessons 4&5

#### A place in Egypt

The Siwa Oasis is a popular place in Egypt. You can visit different places there. You should wear summer clothes at daytime and a jacket at night time. You can eat sweet dates. It's a nice place.

4

### Test Unit 4

#### The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is in Giza, Egypt. It is near the Pyramids. It has many treasures. It is full of history.



## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Adel is ..... years old.

(seven - eight - nine)

2. Adel goes to school by .....

(car - bike - bus)

3. The school is ..... the shopping mall.

(next to - behind - between)

## B- Language Functions

### 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل.

ride - meet - pictures - tour

Sara : Welcome to Egypt! I work as a ..... guide.

Tourist : Nice to ..... you! I like to visit the pyramids.

Sara : You can ..... a camel.

Tourist : Great! I can take ....., too.

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Every winter, I visit Cairo with my family. We go to the Pyramids and see a tour guide who talks about history. We ride camels and take pictures. After that, we visit the Egyptian Museum. It is full of old treasures and rocks. Then we walk to the Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to buy gifts to our friends.

#### A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do you buy from Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar? .....

2. What do you do at the Pyramids? .....

#### B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Every ..... I visit Cairo.

a summer

b spring

c winter

d Friday

## Unit 4 Egypt My Homeland

4. The Egyptian Museum is full of old ..... and rocks.

- a** games                      **b** clothes                      **c** treasures                      **d** camels

5. The tour guide talks about the ..... of the Pyramids.

- a** toys                      **b** building                      **c** history                      **d** friends

### D- Vocabulary and Structures

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. We can read and borrow books at the .....

- a** hospital                      **b** library  
**c** restaurant                      **d** shopping mall

2. A ..... helps tourists learn about places.

- a** doctor                      **b** nurse                      **c** tour guide                      **d** policeman

3. People enjoy the ..... world in St. Catherine.

- a** colorful                      **b** natural                      **c** horrible                      **d** history

4. My family picture is ..... the wall of the living room.

- a** in                      **b** on                      **c** next                      **d** behind

5. My school is ..... to the post office.

- a** in front                      **b** between                      **c** behind                      **d** next

### E- Writing

**5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:**

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. place - in - is - Egypt - a popular - St. Catherine

2. take - the Pyramids - Tourists - at - pictures - many

3. the - The lamp - chair - to - is - next

4. people - help - Doctors - better - feel - sick

5. River - very - is - The Nile - long



# Test on Unit 4

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. This is Roberto's ..... time in Egypt.

- a** first                      **b** second                      **c** third                      **d** fourth

2. Roberto is ..... to be in Egypt.

- a** happy                      **b** sad                      **c** sick                      **d** unwell

3. He plans to ..... on the Nile River.

- a** swim                      **b** dive                      **c** snorkel                      **d** sail

4. Egypt is full of ..... places.

- a** horrible                      **b** bad                      **c** amazing                      **d** terrible

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. People enjoy going to the ..... where many shops sell different things.

- a** shopping mall                      **b** school                      **c** hospital                      **d** library

2. You can buy olive oil and sweet ..... from Siwa Oasis.

- a** clothes                      **b** photos                      **c** dates                      **d** rocks

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**Oasis - River - Bazaar - visit - full**

I love visiting the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. It is ① ..... of treasures. It is next to the Nile ② ..... . Many tour guides explain the history. After my ③ ..... I always go to the Khan Al-Khalili ④ ..... . I always enjoy my time there.

## 4

Ahmed enjoys visiting Aswan because it is full of natural and historical places. Every morning, he wears light clothes and walks along the Nile River. He loves seeing the colorful boats. Sometimes he visits the old monasteries or climbs small hills to see colorful rocks. In the evening, he watches the sunset and takes beautiful photos. Because Aswan is warm, Ahmed always brings water and wears a hat. At night, the weather gets cooler, so he carries a jacket. Aswan is his favorite place for adventure!

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....
- a the Nile River                      b the sunset  
c Aswan                                  d the adventure
2. Ahmed always brings water and wears a ..... in the morning.
- a jacket                      b coat                      c hat                      d jumper

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Why does Ahmed enjoy visiting Aswan? .....
4. What does Ahmed do in the evening? .....

**5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The fan is .....(**in**) the table and the chair.
2. The teacher is standing ..... (**next**) of the board.
3. My friend sits ..... (**front**) to me.
4. There is a picture ..... (**in**) the door.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

which places do you like to visit \_\_\_\_\_

**7** Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن :

**مَجَاب عَنْهُ آخِرُ الْوَحْدَةِ**

## The Grand Egyptian Museum

## Giza - treasures - history



# Unit 5



## A day at work

## يوم في العمل

### Learning Outcomes

#### Speaking:

- Discuss significance of different jobs / uniforms

يناقش الطالب أهمية الوظائف المختلفة والازياء الموحدة.

- Use superlative adjectives in sentences

يستخدم الطالب الصفات العليا في الجمل.

#### Listening:

- Identify the roles of different jobs in a conversation

يتعرف الطالب على ادوار الوظائف المختلفة من خلال حوار.

- Produce long vowel sounds with silent 'e'

ينطق الطالب أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممتدة في كلمات بها الحرف e الذي لا ينطق.

#### Reading:

- Answer comprehension questions about different jobs according to the information in a reading text

يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة فهم عن وظائف مختلفة تبعا للمعلومات في نص القراءة.

- Identify main ideas in a story setting

يحدد الطالب الأفكار الرئيسية في قصة

#### Writing:

- Write non-fiction texts to reflect the components of a paragraph about jobs

يكتب الطالب نصوصاً غير خيالية تعكس مكونات الفقرة حول الوظائف.

- Provide a different ending to a story

يقترح الطالب نهاية مختلفة لقصة.

# Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



doctor طبيب



nurse ممرضة



teacher مدرس



engineer مهندس



firefighter رجل إطفاء



police officer ضابط شرطة



## Other words

كلمات أخرى

costumes  
design  
uniform  
fires  
job  
coat

أزياء  
يصمم / تصميم  
زي رسمي  
حرائق  
وظيفة  
معطف

helmet  
building  
care  
important  
students  
patients

خوذة  
مبنى  
رعاية / يعتني  
هام  
طلاب  
مرضى



## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جرو عبارات

let's talk about..

هيا بنا نتحدث عن..

help sick people

يساعد الناس المرضى

check their health

يفحص صحتهم

design new buildings

يصمم مباني جديدة

well done!

احسنت صنعا

care for

يعتني بـ



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

|        |            |
|--------|------------|
| check  | يفحص       |
| design | يصمم       |
| stop   | يتوقف      |
| save   | ينقذ/ يحفظ |

#### Past ماض

|          |
|----------|
| checked  |
| designed |
| stopped  |
| saved    |

#### Present مضارع

|         |       |
|---------|-------|
| wear    | يرتدي |
| grow up | يكبر  |

#### Past ماض

|         |
|---------|
| wore    |
| grew up |

## Definitions

تعريفات

|                |           |                                                |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------|
| doctor         | طبيب      | helps sick people/checks the health of people. |
| police officer | ضابط شرطة | protects the people.                           |
| engineer       | مهندس     | designs new buildings.                         |
| firefighter    | رجل إطفاء | saves people from fires.                       |
| nurse          | ممرضة     | helps the doctors and patients.                |

### Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

stop + n / v+ing يتوقف / يوقف

- He stops fires.

## Study the following

1 What do you do at your job?

- ماذا تفعل في وظيفتك؟

2 Doctors help sick people and check their health.

- الأطباء يساعدون المرضى ويفحصون صحتهم.

3 An Engineer designs new buildings.

- المهندس يصمم المباني الجديدة.

4 A nurse helps the doctors and care for the patients

- الممرضة تساعد الأطباء وتعتني بالمرضى.

5 A firefighter stops fires and save people.

- رجل الإطفاء يوقف الحرائق وينقذ الناس.

## عندما أكبر... When I grow up..

## 1 Listen and read:

استمع إلى النص : استمع وأقرأ :



Ms. Hala is talking to her students about what they want to be when they grow up.

الأستاذة هالة تتحدث مع طلابها عن ماذا يريدون أن يصبحوا عندما يكبرون.

**Ms. Hala :** Good morning, dear students! Let's talk about your costumes.

الأستاذة هالة: صباح الخير، يا طلابي الأعزاء! هيا نتحدث عن أزيائكم.

**Sara :** I'm a **doctor**<sup>(1)</sup>. I wear a white coat.

سارة: أنا طبيبة. ارتدي معطفًا أبيض.

**Ms. Hala :** What do you do at your job?

الأستاذة هالة: ماذا تفعلين في عملك؟

**Sara :** I **help sick people**<sup>(2)</sup> and check their health.

سارة: أساعد المرضى وأفحص صحتهم.

**Ali :** I'm an **engineer**<sup>(3)</sup>. I wear a yellow helmet.

علي: أنا مهندس. ارتدي خوذة صفراء.

**Ms. Hala :** What do you do at your job?



الأستاذة هالة: ماذا تفعل في عملك؟

**Ali :** I **design**<sup>(4)</sup> new buildings.

علي: أصمم مباني جديدة.

**Talia :** I'm a **nurse**<sup>(5)</sup>. I wear a blue uniform.

تاليا: أنا ممرضة. ارتدي زيًا أزرق.

**Ms. Hala :** What do you do at your job?

الأستاذة هالة: ماذا تفعلين في عملك؟

**Talia :** I help the doctors and **care for the patients**<sup>(6)</sup>.

تاليا: أساعد الأطباء وأعتني بالمرضى.

**Omar :** I'm a **firefighter**<sup>(7)</sup>. I wear a red uniform.

عمر: أنا رجل إطفاء. ارتدي زيًا أحمر.

**Ms. Hala :** What do you do at your job?

الأستاذة هالة: ماذا تفعل في عملك؟

**Omar :** I **stop fires**<sup>(8)</sup> and **save people**<sup>(9)</sup>.

عمر: أطفئ الحرائق وأقعد الناس.

**Ms. Hala :** All your jobs are really important. Well done!

الأستاذة هالة: جميع وظائفكم مهمة جدًا. عمل رائع!



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. A ..... helps sick people.

☐ a teacher

☐ b doctor

☐ c driver

☐ d farmer

2. A ..... teaches students.

☐ a nurse

☐ b firefighter

☐ c teacher

☐ d cook

3. A police officer keeps the ..... safe.

☐ a house

☐ b city

☐ c school

☐ d shop

4. A firefighter ..... out fires.

☐ a puts

☐ b takes

☐ c helps

☐ d checks

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ..... checks people's health and helps them when they are sick.

☐ a doctor

☐ b engineer

☐ c firefighter

☐ d farmer

2. An engineer ..... new buildings.

☐ a cleans

☐ b designs

☐ c cuts

☐ d saves

3. A firefighter ..... people from danger.

☐ a teaches

☐ b plays with

☐ c saves

☐ d checks

4. A nurse ..... the patients at the hospital.

☐ a cares for

☐ b builds

☐ c paints

☐ d drives

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

stops - important - uniform - world - nurse

When I grow up, I want to be a nurse. A nurse wears a ① ..... and helps sick people. My friend wants to be a firefighter. He ② ..... fires and saves people. We think all jobs are ③ ..... . We want to help the ④ ..... and make life better.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

People do many jobs in the community. Doctors help sick people and check their health. Nurses care for patients. Firefighters stop fires and save people. Teachers

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Unit 5 A day at work

help students learn new things. Each job is important. People work together to make life better. When you grow up, you can choose a job that helps others and makes you proud. Think about what you love, and work hard for your dream!

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors help sick people and ..... their health.  
**a** clean                      **b** check                      **c** close                      **d** call
2. A ..... stops fires and saves people.  
**a** nurse                      **b** teacher                      **c** driver                      **d** firefighter

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do doctors do? .....
4. Who helps students learn? .....

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Doctors ..... (**help**) sick people.
2. My father ..... (**be**) an engineer.
3. Nurses ..... (**care**) for patients in the hospital.
4. Omar ..... (**stop**) fires and saves people.

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where do you live .....

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

#### Your dream job

What is your dream job?

Why do you like it?

What do you want to do in the future?

.....

.....

.....

.....





# Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



mentor

مرشد / مُوجِّه

voice-over actor

مؤدي صوتي

wildlife photographer

مصور الحياة البرية

puppets

دمى متحركة

## Other words

كلمات أخرى

brave

شجاع

pictures

صور

interesting

شيق

faraway places

أماكن بعيدة

wild animals

حيوانات برية

stories

قصص

smile

ابتسامة

loud laugh

ضحكة عالية

the show

العرض

exciting

مثير

high voice

صوت عالي

cartoons

كرتون / رسوم متحركة

characters

شخصيات

shy

خجول

good marks

درجات عالية

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

get good marks

يحصل على درجات عالية

take great photos

يلتقط صور رائعة

makes me happy

يجعلني سعيد

do well!

يؤدي أداء حسن

make high voices

يُصدر أصوات عالية

works with

يعمل مع

voices for

أصوات لـ...

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

| Present مضارع |        |
|---------------|--------|
| wait          | ينتظر  |
| work          | يعمل   |
| use           | يستخدم |

Past ماضٍ

waited  
worked  
used

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |          |
|---------------|----------|
| become        | يصبح     |
| get           | يحصل على |
| feel          | يشعر     |
| find          | يجد      |

Past ماضٍ

became  
got  
felt  
found

## Study the following

1 She helps young students.

- هي تساعد الطلاب الصغار

2 "I help shy students become brave,"

- اساعد الطلاب الخجولين يصبحوا شجعان .

3 He takes pictures of wild animals.

- يلتقط صور للحيوانات البرية .

4 I take great photos in faraway places.

- التقط صور رائعة لاماكن البعيدة .

5 Salma works with puppets.

- سلمى تعمل بالدمى المتحركة .

6 She uses puppets to tell stories.

- تستخدم الدمى المتحركة لتروي القصص .

7 "I do many shows for children,"

- اقدم عروض كثيرة للأطفال .

8 I make little voices for small characters.

- أقوم بإصدار أصوات صغيرة لشخصيات صغيرة .



## Read the text.

اقرأ النص:

## Four Amazing Jobs أربع وظائف مذهلة

استمع إلى النص:



Noha is a **mentor**<sup>(1)</sup>. She has a very kind and helpful work!

نهي مرشدة. لديها وظيفة لطيفة ومفيدة جداً!

She helps young students learn and grow.

هي تساعد الطلاب الصغار ليتعلموا وينمووا.

"I help shy students become brave," she says.

تقول: "أنا أساعد الطلاب الخجولين ليصبحوا شجائن."

"When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!"

عندما يحصلون على درجات جيدة، أشعر بشعور رائع. يسعدني عندما يتفوقون.

Amr is a **wildlife photographer**<sup>(2)</sup>. He has an interesting job!

أمرو مصور حياة برية. لديه وظيفة ممتعة.

He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places."

هو يلتقط صوراً للحيوانات البرية. يقول: أجد أكبر الأسود وأصغر الطيور، كما يقول. ألتقط صوراً رائعة في أماكن بعيدة.

Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

في بعض الأحيان، أنتظر وقتاً طويلاً للحصول على أفضل صورة!

Salma works with **puppets**<sup>(3)</sup>. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories.

سلمى تعمل بالدمى (العرائس). لديها وظيفة رائعة! هي تستخدم الدمى لتروي القصص.

"I do many shows for children," she says.

تقول: أقدم عروض كثيرة للأطفال.

"I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!"

أحب رؤية ابتساماتهم العريضة وسماع ضحكاتهم العالية. من الممتع أن يستمتع الأطفال بالعرض!

Adel is a **voice-over actor**<sup>(4)</sup>. He has an exciting job!

عادل مؤدي أصوات. لديه وظيفة مثيرة!

He makes voices for cartoons.

يقوم بعمل أصوات لشخصيات الكرتون.

"I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow."

يقول: "أستطيع إصدار أصوات عالية ومنخفضة. أتحدث بسرعة كبيرة أو ببطء شديد."

I make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

أقوم بإصدار أصوات صغيرة للشخصيات الصغيرة وأصوات عالية للشخصيات الكبيرة!



## Arabic Meaning

- ١- مرشد / موجه
- ٢- مصور الحياة البرية
- ٣- دمي متحركة
- ٤- مؤدي صوتي



## Superlative adjectives

نستخدم صفات التفضيل العليا للمقارنة بين شخص أو شيء أو حيوان ومجموعة اشخاص أو اشياء أو حيوانات

باقى الجملة + est + الصفة + the + الاسم

- This is **the tallest** tree in the park.

## Examples:

هناك صفات شاذة لا يضاف اليها **est** مثل **good bad**

good → جيد → **the best**

bad → سيئ → **the worst**

لاحظ

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **e** نضيف **st** فقط

large → **the largest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن + متحرك + ساكن نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف **est**

big → **the biggest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف **iest**

happy → **the happiest**

## Examples in Sentences:

- He is **the tallest** in the class.

(هو أطول واحد في الفصل.)

- This is **the biggest** bag.

(هذه أكبر حقيبة.)

- She is **the oldest** in the family.

(هي الأكبر سنًا في العائلة.)

يجب دائما ان نضع **the** قبل صفة التفضيل العليا.

## Checkup Exercises ✓

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She is the ..... (**kind**) mentor.

2. Omar takes the ..... (**great**) photos.

3. My bag is the ..... (**heavy**) bag.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Hala helps students to be .....

- ☐ a brave      ☐ b fast      ☐ c funny      ☐ d sad

2. Omar takes ..... of animals.

- ☐ a pictures      ☐ b books      ☐ c bags      ☐ d pens

3. Rana makes shows for .....

- ☐ a children      ☐ b teachers      ☐ c doctors      ☐ d farmers

4. Sami changes his ..... in cartoons.

- ☐ a voice      ☐ b clothes      ☐ c color      ☐ d time

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The ..... takes photos of wild animals.

- ☐ a mentor      ☐ b voice-over actor  
☐ c wildlife photographer      ☐ d teacher

2. A ..... helps students learn and grow.

- ☐ a mentor      ☐ b puppet artist      ☐ c photographer      ☐ d singer

3. We use ..... to tell stories in shows for children.

- ☐ a cameras      ☐ b puppets      ☐ c birds      ☐ d photos

4. A ..... makes high and low voices for cartoons.

- ☐ a doctor      ☐ b wildlife photographer  
☐ c mentor      ☐ d voice-over actor

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

**students - animals - voices - shows - pictures**

Some people have fun jobs. Laila is a mentor. She helps ① ..... to feel strong and happy. Kareem is a photographer. He takes ② ..... of wild ③ ..... . Yara is a voice-over actor. She makes funny ④ ..... for cartoons. They all love their special jobs!

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Many people have special jobs. Mariam is a swimming coach. She teaches children how to swim safely. Tarek is a tour guide. He shows visitors beautiful places in Egypt and tells them stories. Dina is an artist. She paints large pictures of nature. Each person loves their job because they help people learn, enjoy, and discover new things.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mariam is a ..... coach.  
 a swimming      b drawing      c cooking      d reading
- Dina paints ..... pictures of nature.  
 a small      b funny      c large      d short

#### B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Mariam teach children? .....
- What is Tarek's job? .....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Ahmed is the ..... (tall) in the class.
- This bag is ..... (big) than the other one.
- My cat is ..... (smaller) my dog.
- Her bag is the ..... (heavy) bag.
- My grandpa is the ..... (wise) person I know.
- Ahmed told us the ..... (funny) story at the party.
- August is the ..... (hot) month of the year.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

my friend is a photographer .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The job of a wildlife photographer

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

What does he do?  
 Where does he work?  
 Why is this job interesting?



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                   |            |               |             |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| skilled carpenter | نجار ماهر  | wooden chairs | كراسي خشبية |
| strong houses     | منازل قوية | tables        | طاوولات     |
| furniture         | أثاث       | gift          | هدية        |
| keys              | مفاتيح     | board         | لوح خشبي    |
| poor work         | عمل سيء    | nail          | مسمار       |
| windows           | شبابيك     | carelessly    | بإهمال      |
| doors             | أبواب      | regret        | ندم         |
| weak wood         | خشب ضعيف   |               |             |

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|           |            |           |                 |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------------|
| village   | قرية       | hard work | العمل بجد       |
| beautiful | جميل       | rest      | الراحة / الباقي |
| lifetime  | مدة الحياة | careful   | حريص            |
| matter    | أمر        | busy      | مشغول           |

## Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|                 |              |                     |                      |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| for many years  | لسنوات عديدة | turned red          | يحمر (تدل على الخجل) |
| far away        | بعيد جداً    | with a request      | بطلب                 |
| over the years  | عبر السنين   | looked nothing like | لم يكن شبه هذا       |
| stood in shock. | وقف مصدوماً  |                     |                      |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

| Present مضارع |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| admire        | يعجب         |
| travel        | يسافر        |
| agree         | يوافق        |
| promise       | يوعد         |
| repair        | يصلح         |
| hammer        | يدق بالمطرقة |

### أفعال منتظمة

#### Past ماضٍ

|          |
|----------|
| admired  |
| traveled |
| agreed   |
| promised |
| repaired |
| hammered |

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع |      |
|---------------|------|
| build         | يبني |
| grow          | يزرع |
| give          | يعطي |

#### Past ماضٍ

|       |
|-------|
| built |
| grew  |
| gave  |

## Definitions تعريفات

|                |             |                                       |
|----------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>fit</b>     | مناسب/ملائم | to be the right size.                 |
| <b>wooden</b>  | خشبي        | made from wood.                       |
| <b>skilled</b> | ماهر        | very good at doing something.         |
| <b>promise</b> | يعد         | means that you will definitely do it. |

## Study the following

### 1 Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village.

- كان سامي نجاراً ماهراً يعيش في قرية هادئة.

### 2 He built strong houses and beautiful furniture.

- كان يبني منازل قوية وأثاثاً جميلاً.

### 3 After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired.

- بعد فترة طويلة من العمل الشاق، شعر سامي بالتعب.

### 4 He decided it was time to rest and stop building.

- قرر أن الوقت قد حان ليرتاح ويتوقف عن البناء.

### 5 But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request.

- ولكن قبل أن يتقاعد، جاءه ملك القرية بطلب.

### 6 "It will be your final gift to the village.

- ستكون هديتك الأخيرة للقرية.

### 7 Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it.

- وافق سامي على مضمض.



8 He didn't check the windows or the doors.

لم يفحص النوافذ أو الأبواب.

9 The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

لم يكن المنزل يشبه عمله المعتاد الدقيق على الإطلاق.

10 He slowly repaired the house, board by board

بدأ يُصلح المنزل ببطء، لوحًا بعد لوح.

11 Sami remembered who he truly was.

تذكر سامي من هو حقًا.

12 From that day on, Sami promised to always give his best

من ذلك اليوم، وعد سامي أن يبذل أفضل ما لديه دائمًا.

استمع إلى النص:



### Listen and read. What did the village king ask Sami to do?

استمع واقرا ماذا طلب ملك القرية من سامي

Sami was a **skilled carpenter**<sup>(1)</sup> who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built **strong houses**<sup>(2)</sup> and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some **traveled**<sup>(3)</sup> from far away just to see his **wooden chairs**<sup>(4)</sup> and **tables**<sup>(5)</sup>.

كان سامي نجارًا ماهرًا يعيش في قرية هادئة. على مدار سنوات طويلة، كان يبني بيوتًا قوية وأثاثًا جميلًا. وكان الناس يُعجبون بعمله، بل إن بعضهم كان يسافر من أماكن بعيدة فقط لرؤية كراسيه الخشبية وطاولاته.

After a lifetime of **hard work**<sup>(6)</sup>, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request.

وبعد عمر قضاه في العمل الشاق، شعر سامي بالتعب، وقرر أنه حان وقت الراحة والتوقف عن البناء. لكن قبل أن يتقاعد، جاء إليه ملك القرية بطلب.

"Please **build**<sup>(7)</sup> one last house," the king said. "It will be your final gift to the village."

قال الملك: «من فضلك، ابن منزلًا أخيرًا. سيكون هديتك الأخيرة للقرية.»

Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it. He used weak wood. He didn't check the **windows**<sup>(8)</sup> or the **doors**<sup>(9)</sup>. The windows didn't fit. The doors were crooked. The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

وافق سامي، على مضض. استخدم خشبًا ضعيفًا، ولم يفحص النوافذ أو الأبواب. كانت النوافذ لا تُفلق جيدًا، والأبواب كانت ملتوية. بدا المنزل مختلفًا تمامًا عن عمله المتقن المعتاد.

When the house was finished, Sami gave the keys to the king. The king smiled kindly and said. "This house is for you, Sami. It's a **gift**<sup>(10)</sup> for all your wonderful work over the years."

وعندما انتهى من بناء المنزل، أعطى المفاتيح للملك. فابتسم الملك بلطف وقال: «هذا المنزل لك، يا سامي. إنه هدية لك على كل عملك الرائع طوال هذه السنوات.»

Sami stood in shock. His own **poor work**<sup>(11)</sup> was now his home. His face turned red with **regret**<sup>(12)</sup>. He had built this house **carelessly**<sup>(13)</sup> and now he had to live in it.

وقف سامي مصدومًا. لقد أصبح عمله السيئ هو منزله الخاص. واحمر وجهه من الندم. لقد بنى هذا المنزل بإهمال، والآن عليه أن يعيش فيه.

#### Arabic Meaning

١- نجار ماهر

٢- منازل قوية

٣- سافر

٤- كراسي خشبية

٥- طاولة

٦- عمل بجد

٧- يبني

٨- شبابيك

٩- أبواب

١٠- هدية

١١- عمل سيئ

١٢- ندم

١٣- بإهمال

From that day on, Sami promised to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly repaired the house, **board**<sup>(14)</sup> by board, and made it strong and beautiful again.

١٤- لوح خشبي  
١٥- مسمار  
١٦- دق بالمطرقة

ومنذ ذلك اليوم، وعد سامي أن يُقدِّم أفضل ما عنده دائماً، مهما كان متعباً أو مشغولاً. وبدأ في

إصلاح المنزل، لوحاً بعد لوح، حتى جعله قوياً وجميلاً من جديد.

And with each **nail**<sup>(15)</sup> he **hammered**<sup>(16)</sup>, Sami remembered who he truly was.

ومع كل مسمار يسنقه، كان سامي يتذكر من هو حقاً.

## Pronunciation

### ★ Listen and say

استمع وقل :

When a silent “-e” comes at the end of a word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel. This is like “**rope**” and “**slide**”.

عندما يأتي حرف **e** آخر الكلمة ويسبقه حرف ساكن ينتج عن ذلك صوت متحرك ممتد كما في كلمتي **rope/slide**

استمع إلى المفردات :



cube مكعب



face وجه



slide زحليقة



rope حبل



stone حجر



flute ناي



gate بوابة



nine تسعة

### Listen and complete with long vowel words. Then repeat the sentences.

استمع واكمل بكلمات ممتدة متحركة ثم ردد الجمل :

1. I play on the ..... in the park.
2. My house has a very big .....
3. My sister can play the .....



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Lena was asked to ..... a wall at school.  
☐ a color      ☐ b happy      ☐ c ugly      ☐ d color
- She painted the wall ..... and carelessly.  
☐ a quickly      ☐ b slowly      ☐ c neatly      ☐ d happy
- Everyone saw the ..... work.  
☐ a tidy      ☐ b messy      ☐ c beautiful      ☐ d ugly
- Lena learned to always do her .....  
☐ a best      ☐ b slowly      ☐ c sadly      ☐ d worst

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

SB

- If you ..... to do something, it means that you will definitely do it.  
☐ a hammer      ☐ b promise      ☐ c built      ☐ d dislike
- Sami was a ..... carpenter. He is good at making chairs and tables  
☐ a careless      ☐ b bad      ☐ c skilled      ☐ d poor
- The box is ..... This means it is made of wood.  
☐ a gold      ☐ b wooden      ☐ c silver      ☐ d plastic
- The shirt is ..... It is the right size.  
☐ a fit      ☐ b hit      ☐ c sit      ☐ d large
- My friend gave me a ..... on my birthday.  
☐ a house      ☐ b gift      ☐ c space      ☐ d sun
- Sami used weak ..... to build the house.  
☐ a water      ☐ b paper      ☐ c wood      ☐ d air
- The story teaches us to do our ..... when tired.  
☐ a best      ☐ b worst      ☐ c slowest      ☐ d cheapest

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**wood - house - doors - chairs - strong**

Mostafa is a young carpenter. He builds a small ① ..... in the village. He uses good ② ..... . He makes ③ ..... and a nice ④ ..... . Everyone likes his work because it is neat and beautiful.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Karim works as a carpenter in a big town. He uses wood to make tables and beds. People like his work because it is strong and neat. One day, he made a gift for his friend: a small wooden chair.

His was happy when he saw the chair. He thanked Karim and said to him " You are the best carpenter".

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Karim works in a big .....  
 a school                      b hospital                      c town                      d farm
2. What did Karim make for his friend?  
 a a table                      b a bed                      c a chair                      d a door

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What is Karim's job?  
 -----
4. What does he use to make furniture?  
 -----

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

**A carpenter**

What does a carpenter do?  
 What tools does he use?  
 Where does he work?

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# ★ Writing & project

## Non-Fiction & Origami Jobs

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                    |               |              |                   |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|
| firefighter        | رجل اطفاء     | equipment    | معدات             |
| fire station       | محطة الإطفاء  | big red fire | نار كبيرة وحمراء  |
| protective uniform | زِيّ حماية    | right place  | المكان المناسب    |
| water hoses        | خراطيم المياه | oxygen tanks | أسطوانات الأكسجين |
| alarm              | إنذار / تنبيه | tools        | أدوات             |
| danger             | خطر           | saving lives | إنقاذ أرواح       |
| hero               | بطل           |              |                   |

### Other words كلمات أخرى

|         |                                |            |        |
|---------|--------------------------------|------------|--------|
| local   | محلي                           | ready      | مستعد  |
| heavy   | ثقيل                           | special    | خاص    |
| helmet  | خوذة                           | community  | مجتمع  |
| proud   | فخور                           | difference | اختلاف |
| origami | فن ياباني لطى الورق لعمل اشكال |            |        |

### Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

|                           |                               |                     |                    |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| at our local fire station | في محطة الإطفاء المحلية لدينا | make sure           | يتأكد              |
| keep ... safe             | يبقى آمن                      | making a difference | يحدث اختلاف أو فرق |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع | Past ماض  | Present مضارع       | Past ماض |
|---------------|-----------|---------------------|----------|
| save ينقذ     | saved     | wear يرتدي          | wore     |
| protect يحمي  | protected | keep يحافظ على      | kept     |
|               |           | put يضع             | put      |
|               |           | ride يقود           | rode     |
|               |           | fight يكافح / يحارب | fought   |



## Study the following

- 1 He wears a thick protective uniform. - يرتدي زيًا واقياً سميكًا.
- 2 He checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. - يتفقد معداته ويحافظ على جاهزية شاحنة الإطفاء الحمراء الكبيرة.
- 3 He quickly puts on his equipment. - يرتدي معداته بسرعة.
- 4 He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place. - كما يتأكد من أن كل شيء نظيف وفي مكانه الصحيح.
- 5 He uses special tools. - يستخدم أدوات خاصة.
- 6 Omar says the part he likes about his job is saving lives. - يقول عمر إن الجزء الذي يحبه في وظيفته هو إنقاذ الأرواح.
- 7 The work is dangerous. - العمل خطير.
- 8 He's proud to be a firefighter. - إنه فخور بكونه رجل إطفاء.
- 9 He likes helping others and making a difference. - هو يحب مساعدة الآخرين واحداث فرق.

### Tip!

## When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself:

عندما تكتب نصًا غير خيالي (واقعي)، اسأل نفسك:

Is the information true?

هل المعلومات صحيحة؟

Did I make anything up?

هل قمت باختراع أي شيء؟

Is my source reliable?

هل مصدري موثوق؟

Non-Fiction writing should include:

يجب أن يتضمن الكتابة غير الخيالية:

An introductory sentence, like "My neighbor Omar is a firefighter at our local fire station." جملة افتتاحية، مثل: "جارنا عمر يعمل رجل إطفاء في محطة الإطفاء المحلية لدينا."

Details that are all true, like "He wears a thick protective uniform with

bright yellow stripes ... صفراء لامعة..".

"Adjectives, like "thick", "special tools", "big red fire truck".

استخدم صفات في النص مثل: "سميك"، "أدوات خاصة"، "شاحنة إطفاء حمراء كبيرة".

A closing sentence, like "The work is dangerous, but he's proud to be a

firefighter." جملة ختامية، مثل: "العمل خطير، لكنه فخور بكونه رجل إطفاء."



Read this non-fiction (real-life) story:

استمع إلى النص:



### Heroes Who Fight Fires

My neighbor, Omar, is a **firefighter**<sup>(1)</sup> at our local **fire station**<sup>(2)</sup>. He wears a thick **protective uniform**<sup>(3)</sup> with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe.

جارنا عمر يعمل رجل إطفاء في محطة الإطفاء المحلية لدينا. يرتدي زيًا واقياً سميكاً بخطوط صفراء لامعة وخوذة ثقيلة لحمايته.

Every day at the station, he checks his **equipment**<sup>(4)</sup> and keeps the **big red fire**<sup>(5)</sup> truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the **right place**<sup>(6)</sup>.

When the **alarm**<sup>(7)</sup> rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in **danger**<sup>(8)</sup>. He uses special **tools**<sup>(9)</sup> like **water hoses**<sup>(10)</sup>, ladders, and **oxygen tanks**<sup>(11)</sup> to fight fires and save people.

#### Arabic Meaning

١. رجل المطفأ
٢. محطة الإطفاء
٣. زيّ حماية
٤. معدات
٥. نار كبيرة وحمراء
٦. المكان المناسب
٧. إنذار / تنبيه
٨. خطر
٩. أدوات
١٠. خراطيم المياه
١١. أسطوانات الأكسجين
١٢. إنقاذ الأرواح
١٣. خطير

كل يوم في المحطة، يقوم بفحص معداته ويحرص على أن تكون سيارة الإطفاء الحمراء الكبيرة جاهزة. كما يتأكد من أن كل شيء نظيف وفي المكان الصحيح. وعندما يدق جرس الإنذار، يرتدي معداته بسرعة ويركب الشاحنة مع فريقه لمساعدة الناس المعرضين للخطر. يستخدم أدوات خاصة مثل خراطيم المياه، والسلالم، وأسطوانات الأكسجين لمكافحة الحرائق وإنقاذ الناس.

Omar says the part he likes most about his job is **saving lives**<sup>(12)</sup> and protecting our community. The work is **dangerous**<sup>(13)</sup>, but he's proud to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

يقول عمر إن أكثر جزء يُحبه في عمله هو إنقاذ الأرواح وحماية مجتمعنا. العمل خطير، لكنه فخور بكونه رجل إطفاء لأنه يحب مساعدة الآخرين وإحداث فرق في حياة الناس.

# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b or c:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Hany is a ..... firefighter.  
☐ a brave                      ☐ b lazy                      ☐ c scared                      ☐ d bad
- He works at a ..... station.  
☐ a police                      ☐ b bus                      ☐ c fire                      ☐ d school
- He wears a strong uniform and a big .....  
☐ a helmet                      ☐ b cap                      ☐ c bag                      ☐ d skirt
- He loves his job and ..... lives.  
☐ a drawing                      ☐ b saving                      ☐ c washing                      ☐ d wasting

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Firefighters wear a ..... to keep them safe.  
☐ a school bag                      ☐ b uniform  
☐ c protective uniform                      ☐ d T-shirt
- The fire truck is always ready at the .....  
☐ a post office                      ☐ b fire station                      ☐ c train station                      ☐ d shop
- Firefighters use ..... to put out the fire.  
☐ a books                      ☐ b water hoses                      ☐ c tables                      ☐ d ropes
- The ..... rings when there is danger.  
☐ a computer                      ☐ b phone                      ☐ c alarm                      ☐ d fan

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

helmet - boots - uniform - team - help

Ali is a firefighter. He wears a special ① ..... and black ② ..... He also puts on his ③ ..... to protect his head. He works with his ④ ..... to help people in danger.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara saw a fire truck near her school. The firefighters were wearing uniforms and helmets. They were not fighting fires, but they were teaching children how to stay safe. Sara learned how to stop, drop, and roll if her clothes catch fire. She was happy and thanked them.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Sara saw the fire truck .....  
 a at home      b at the market      c near her school      d in the park
2. The firefighters were .....  
 a fighting fires      b cleaning the truck      c teaching safety      d sleeping

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What were the firefighters wearing?

-----

4. What did Sara learn to do if her clothes catch fire?

-----

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A firefighter

- 1- Where does he work?
- 2- What does he do when there is a fire?
- 3- Why is his job important?

-----  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----

# Review



on Unit 5

## Key vocabulary



doctor طبيب



nurse ممرضة



teacher مدرس



engineer مهندس



firefighter رجل إطفاء



police officer ضابط شرطة

mentor

مرشد / مُوجِّه

wildlife photographer

مصور الحياة البرية

skilled carpenter

نجار ماهر

strong houses

منازل قوية

furniture

أثاث

keys

مفاتيح

poor work

عمل سيئ

weak wood

خشب ضعيف

voice-over actor

مؤدي صوتي

puppets

دمى متحركة

wooden chairs

كراسي خشبية

gift

هدية

board

لوح خشبي

nail

مسمار

carelessly

بإهمال

regret

ندم

firefighter

رجل إطفاء

fire station

محطة الإطفاء

protective uniform

زيّ حماية

big red fire

نار كبيرة وحمراء



|              |                   |           |               |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------|---------------|
| right place  | المكان المناسب    | alarm     | إنذار / تنبيه |
| oxygen tanks | أسطوانات الأكسجين | danger    | خطر           |
| tools        | أدوات             | hero      | بطل           |
| saving lives | إنقاذ أرواح       | equipment | معدات         |
| water hoses  | خراطيم المياه     |           |               |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماض

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماض

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| check   | يفحص         |
| design  | يصمم         |
| stop    | يتوقف        |
| save    | ينقذ/ يحفظ   |
| wait    | ينتظر        |
| admire  | يعجب         |
| promise | يوعد         |
| repair  | يصلح         |
| hammer  | يدق بالمطرقة |
| protect | يحمي         |

|           |
|-----------|
| checked   |
| designed  |
| stopped   |
| saved     |
| waited    |
| admired   |
| promised  |
| repaired  |
| hammered  |
| protected |

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| wear    | يرتدي        |
| grow up | يكبر         |
| become  | يصبح         |
| feel    | يشعر         |
| build   | يبني         |
| wear    | يرتدي        |
| ride    | يقود         |
| fight   | يكافح/ يحارب |

|         |
|---------|
| wore    |
| grew up |
| became  |
| felt    |
| built   |
| wore    |
| rode    |
| fought  |

## Language in use

## Superlative adjectives

نستخدم صفات التفضيل العليا للمقارنة بين شخص أو شئ أو حيوان ومجموعة اشخاص أو اشياء أو حيوانات

باقي الجملة + est + الصفة + the + الاسم

- This is **the tallest** tree in the park.

## ► Examples:

هناك صفات بعض الصفات التي لا يضاف اليها **est** مثل **good bad**

good → جيد → **the best**

bad → سي → **the worst**

لاحظ

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **e** نضيف **st** فقط

large → **the largest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن + متحرك + ساكن نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف **est**

big → **the biggest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف **iest**

happy → **the happiest**

## ► Examples in Sentences:

- He is **the tallest** in the class.

(هو أطول واحد في الفصل.)

- This is **the biggest** bag.

(هذه أكبر حقيبة.)

- She is **the oldest** in the family.

(هي الأكبر سنًا في العائلة.)

يجب دائما ان نضع **the** قبل صفة التفضيل العليا.





## Answers to Paragraphs

1

### Lesson 1

#### Your dream job

I want to be a doctor. I like to be a doctor because doctors help sick people and give them medicine. Doctors care for the patients.

2

### Lesson 2

#### A wildlife photographer

A wildlife photographer takes pictures of animals. Sometimes he waits for hours to get the best photo. He loves his job because he likes nature.

3

### Lesson 3

#### A carpenter

A carpenter builds houses and makes furniture. He uses hammers and nails. He works in a workshop.

4

### Lessons 4 & 5

#### A firefighter

A firefighter works in a fire station. He wears a uniform and a helmet. He loves his job because he saves lives.

5

### Test

#### The job I like

I like the job of the mentor. Mentors help students learn. Mentors teach shy students to be brave. Mentors love teaching because they help others.

## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب 

- Omar is a firefighter. He drives a ..... (car - bus - fire truck)
- Sami is a carpenter. He builds ..... (houses - schools - hospitals)
- A firefighter wears a ..... to protect his head. (helmet - uniform - hat)

## B- Language Functions

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the correct words:

اقرأ وأكمل:

helmet - firefighter - tools - carpenter

- Ali : What do you want to be?
- Omar : I want to be a .....
- Ali : Why?
- Omar : Because I want to build houses and use .....
- Ali : My brother is a .....
- Omar : Really? Does he wear a .....?

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Laila is a nurse. She works in a hospital. Every day, she helps sick people. She gives them medicine and cares for them. Laila loves her job because she likes to help people.

#### A: Choose the correct answer:

- Laila works in a/an .....  
 a fire station      b hospital      c school      d bank
- Laila .....  
 a drives a fire truck      b builds houses  
 c helps sick people      d teaches students



3. Laila loves her job because she .....

- a** helps people      **b** makes food      **c** sells clothes      **d** feeds cats

**B: Answer the following questions:**

4. What does Laila give to the patients? .....

5. Why does Laila love her job? .....

**D- Vocabulary and Structures**

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. A ..... uses wood to build chairs.

- a** nurse      **b** carpenter      **c** firefighter

2. The firefighter uses a ..... to go to high places.

- a** ladder      **b** chair      **c** table

3. Sami is a ..... carpenter. He is very good.

- a** skilled      **b** scared      **c** bad

4. This is the ..... chair in the shop.

- a** big      **b** bigger      **c** biggest

5. Today is the ..... day of the year.

- a** hot      **b** hotter      **c** hottest

**5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:**

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة :

1. firefighter - Omar - is - a.

.....

2. carpenter - Sami - is - a.

.....

3. wears - a - helmet - A firefighter.

.....

4. loves - his - He - job.

.....

5. table - makes - Sami - a.

.....

# Test on Unit 5

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ahmed is a .....

- a** doctor                      **b** teacher                      **c** firefighter                      **d** dentist

2. He rides the ..... when there is a fire.

- a** taxi                      **b** fire truck                      **c** bike                      **d** bus

3. He wears a helmet and a ..... uniform.

- a** colorful                      **b** protective                      **c** old                      **d** heavy

4. Ahmed is very .....

- a** lazy                      **b** sad                      **c** brave                      **d** tired

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ..... helps the doctor and takes care of the patients.

- a** pilot                      **b** engineer                      **c** nurse                      **d** cook

2. My uncle is a/an ..... He designs big houses and tall buildings.

- a** mentor                      **b** teacher                      **c** farmer                      **d** engineer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

uniform - car - firefighter - station - people

Ali is a brave ① ..... He works at the fire ② ..... He wears a thick ③ ..... He saves ④ ..... when there is a fire.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is the biggest firefighter in his team. He carries oxygen tanks and water hoses. Omar drives the fire truck very fast. He loves his job because he likes saving lives. At the fire station, he cleans the ladders and checks the fire truck. Omar is the bravest firefighter in the city.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Omar is the ..... firefighter in his team.

**a** smallest

**b** big

**c** small

**d** biggest

2. Omar carries oxygen tanks and water .....

**a** blocks

**b** ladders

**c** hoses

**d** truck

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Why does Omar love his job?

-----

4. What does Omar carry when he goes to a fire?

-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is..... (**big**) ladder in the fire station.

2. Omar is the..... (**strong**) firefighter in his team.

3. Hany is ..... (**brave**) than the other firefighters.

4. My car is ..... (**fast**) in my street.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the engineer builds big bridges

-----

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

A job you like

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

mentor - shy - love

-----

-----

-----

-----



# The Hundred Dresses

## المائة فستان

### Learning Outcomes

#### Speaking:

- Express their favorite character in the story.
- Discuss the moral lessons of a story.

يعبر الطالب عن شخصيته المفضلة في القصة.  
يناقش الطالب الدروس الأخلاقية المستفادة من القصة.

#### Writing:

- Write a letter based on the story's events.

يكتب الطالب خطاب مبني عن أحداث القصة.

#### Reading:

- Answer questions about the story setting, character and events.

يُجيب الطالب على أسئلة حول بيئة القصة وشخصياتها وأحداثها.

- Identify the elements of a story.

يحدد الطالب عناصر القصة.

- Answer critical questions based on the story's events.

يُجيب الطالب على أسئلة نقدية بناءً على أحداث القصة.

#### Listening:

- Understand the sequence of events in a narrated story.

يفهم الطالب تسلسل الأحداث في القصة.



## Characters of the story

شخصيات القصة



استمع إلى المفردات:



Wanda

واندا



Peggy

بجي



Maddie

مادي



Miss Mason

الأنسة ماسون

# Story Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



## Picture Dictionary



dress

فستان



closet

دولاب



playground

ملعب



competition

مسابقة



drawings

رسم



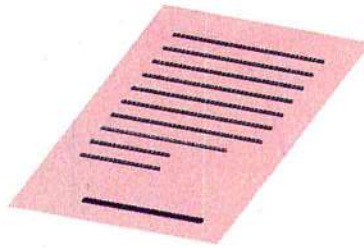
medal

ميدالية





sign يوقع (اسمه)



letter خطاب



announce يعلن

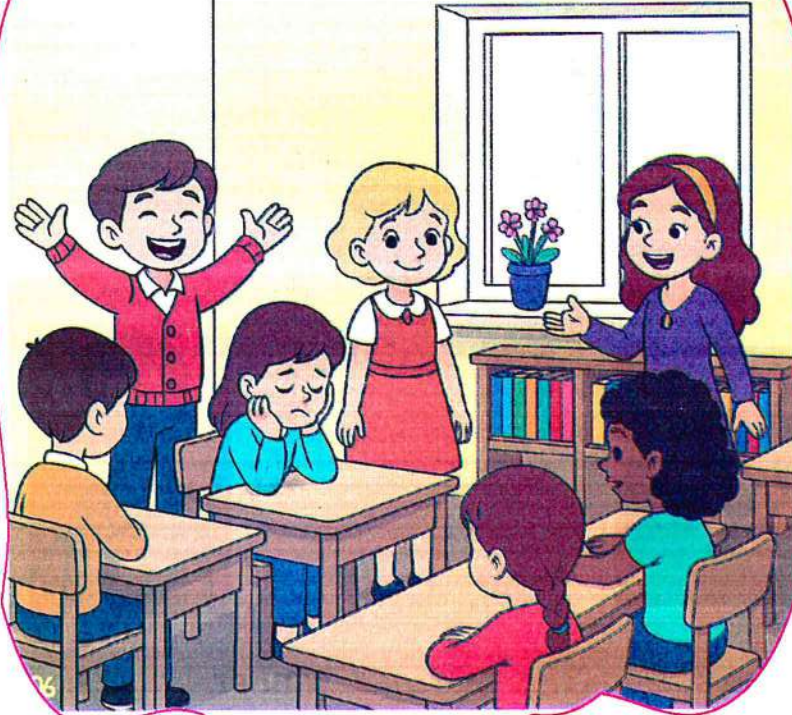


winner فائز

## definitions تعريفات

|           |               |                                                |                                    |
|-----------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| faded     | باهت          | light in color because it is old or used       | خفيف اللون لأنه قديم أو مستعمل.    |
| popular   | معروف / مشهور | known by many people                           | مشهور بين ناس كثيرة.               |
| annoying  | مزعج          | making you feel unhappy or a little angry      | يجعلك تشعر بعدم السعادة أو الغضب.  |
| absent    | غائب          | not in a place                                 | ليس في المكان.                     |
| notice    | يلاحظ         | to see or hear something                       | تري أو تسمع شيئاً.                 |
| behavior  | سلوك          | the way someone acts                           | الطريقة التي يتصرف بها شخص ما.     |
| expensive | غالي          | costs a lot of money                           | يتكلف الكثير من النقود.            |
| bullying  | التنمر        | hurting or scaring other people                | تجريح أو تخويف الآخرين.            |
| apologize | يعتذر         | to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong | تقول أنا آسف عندما تفعل شيئاً خطأ. |

1



In a small school, there was a girl **named**<sup>(1)</sup> Wanda. She was **a quiet**<sup>(2)</sup> girl who sat in the back of the classroom. Wanda always wore the same **faded**<sup>(3)</sup> blue dress every day. **Despite**<sup>(4)</sup> this, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home, all **lined up in**<sup>(5)</sup> her closet.

في مدرسة صغيرة كانت هناك بنت تسمى وندا. كانت بنت هادئة وتجلس في آخر حجرة الفصل كانت وندا دائماً تلبس نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. وبالرغم من ذلك كانت وندا تخبر الجميع بأنها عندها مائة فستان في المنزل وكلاهما متعلقين في دولاها.

|            |           |                |            |          |      |
|------------|-----------|----------------|------------|----------|------|
| 1- named   | تسمى      | 2- quiet       | هادئ       | 3- faded | باهت |
| 4- Despite | بالرغم من | 5- lined up in | متعلقين في |          |      |



2



The popular girls at school, **especially**<sup>(1)</sup> Peggy and Maddie, **annoyed**<sup>(2)</sup> Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the playground, Peggy said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" The other girls laughed. Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed quiet. Maddie was **afraid of**<sup>(3)</sup> losing Peggy's **friendship**<sup>(4)</sup>. Soon, most of the girls were annoying Wanda and **laughing**<sup>(5)</sup> about her hundred dresses.

كانت البنات المشهورة في المدرسة وخاصة "بيجي" و"مادي" يزعجون وندا كل صباح. في يوم ما أثناء ما كانوا في الملعب قالت "بيجي: أهلاً ونداً! أخبريني عن المائة فستان خاصتك!" ضحك البنات الاخرى، لم تحب مادي إزعاج البنات لوندان ولكن احتفظت بهدوئها، كانت مادي خائفة من فقدان صداقة بيجي وسريعا ازعج معظم الاطفال وندا وضحكوا عليها.

|                      |       |                    |      |                     |          |
|----------------------|-------|--------------------|------|---------------------|----------|
| 1- <b>especially</b> | خاصة  | 2- <b>annoyed</b>  | ازعج | 3- <b>afraid of</b> | خائفا من |
| 4- <b>friendship</b> | صداقة | 5- <b>laughing</b> | يضحك |                     |          |

3!



One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, **announced**<sup>(1)</sup> that it was time for the annual drawing competition. Miss Mason said, "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." When it was time to announce the winners, to everyone's **surprise**<sup>(2)</sup>, the walls were **covered with**<sup>(3)</sup> a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda drew and signed all the drawings. She won the competition, but she wasn't there to **receive**<sup>(4)</sup> her medal.

في يوم اعلنت، الآنسة ماسون، أنه حان وقت مسابقة الرسم السنوية. قالت الآنسة ماسون: سوف أختار ولد واحد و بنت واحدة كفائزين. عندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين كانت مفاجأة للجميع كانت الجدران مغطاة بـ مائة رسمة جميلة لفساتين من جميع الألوان والتصاميم. رسمت واند ووقعت على كل الرسومات. فازت بالمسابقة ولكنها غير موجودة لاستلام ميداليتها.

|              |       |             |        |                 |          |
|--------------|-------|-------------|--------|-----------------|----------|
| 1- announced | أعلنت | 2- surprise | مفاجأة | 3- covered with | مغطاة بـ |
| 4- receive   | تتسلم |             |        |                 |          |



4



Wanda was **absent**<sup>(1)</sup> for several days, but no one **noticed**<sup>(2)</sup>. Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved to the big city, where they wouldn't face **unkindness**<sup>(3)</sup>.

Peggy and Maddie felt **terrible**<sup>(4)</sup>. They **realized**<sup>(5)</sup> that when Wanda talked about her hundred dresses, she **meant**<sup>(6)</sup> those drawings, her dreams on paper. Maddie said to Peggy, "We need to write to Wanda and **apologize**<sup>(7)</sup>."

They wrote her a letter, saying, "Wanda, your drawings are beautiful and **amazing**<sup>(8)</sup>. It's very sad that you aren't here to receive your medal. We are sorry for our **behavior**<sup>(9)</sup> and hope that you're happy at your new school."

غابت واندأ لأيام عديدة ولكن لم يلاحظ أحد. قرأت الأنسة ماسون خطاباً من والد واندأ، يقول أن عائلة واندأ انتقلت إلى مدينة كبيرة حيث لم يستطيعوا مواجهة القسوة. شعرت "بجي" و"مادي" بالأسى. أدركوا عندما تكلمت واندأ عن المائة فستان، أنها كانت تقصد الرسومات التي تحلم بها علي الورق. قالت "مادي" إلى "بجي": "نريد أن نكتب لواندأ ونعتذر لها." كتبوا خطاباً لها يقولوا: "واندأ، رسوماتك جميلة ومذهلة. إنه من الأسف أنك لم تتلقى ميداليتك. ونحن آسفين على سلوكنا ونتمنى أن تكوني سعيدة في مدرستك الجديدة."

|              |         |             |           |               |        |
|--------------|---------|-------------|-----------|---------------|--------|
| 1- absent    | غائب    | 2- noticed  | لاحظنا    | 3- unkindness | القسوة |
| 4- terrible  | فظيع/سئ | 5- realized | أدركوا    | 6- meant      | وقصدت  |
| 7- apologize | يعتذر   | 8- amazing  | مذهل/مدهش | 9- behavior   | سلوك   |

5



Wanda received the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. Then, Wanda wrote back to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to **keep**<sup>(1)</sup> my drawings."

This **experience**<sup>(2)</sup> changed Peggy and Maddie forever. They learned that kindness **matters**<sup>(3)</sup> more than expensive clothes. They **promised**<sup>(4)</sup> to always speak up if there was **bullying**<sup>(5)</sup>.

تلقت واند الخطاب في مدرستها الجديدة. كانت سعيدة عندما علمت أن الخطاب من مادي وبجي. ثم ردت عليهم، وقالت شكراً على خطابكم، أنا سعيدة في مدرستي الجديدة، وأريد أن تحتفظوا برسوماتي. هذه التجربة غيرت بجي ومادي إلى الأبد. لقد تعلموا أن العطف أهم من الملابس الغالية، لقد وعدوا بالتحدث دائماً إذا كان هناك تنمر.

|             |            |               |        |            |          |
|-------------|------------|---------------|--------|------------|----------|
| 1- keep     | تحتفظوا بـ | 2- experience | تجربة  | 3- matters | يكون أهم |
| 4- promised | وعدوا      | 5- bullying   | التنمر |            |          |



## 1 Look, read, and number:

انظر وأقرأ ورقم:



1 Peggy



2 Miss Mason

3 Wanda

4 Maddie



## 2 Who said this: Wanda, Maddie, Peggy or Miss Mason?

من قال هذا؟ وندا، مادي، بجي أو الاستاذة ماسون:

1. "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!"

(Peggy)

2. "I want you to keep my drawings."

( )

3. "We need to write to Wanda and apologize."

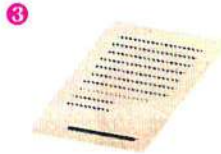
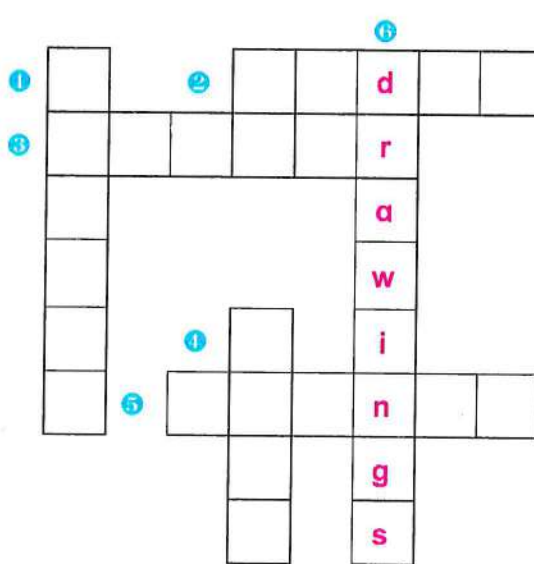
( )

4. "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners."

( )

### 3 Complete the crossword:

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة:



### 4 Read and circle the correct answer:

اقرأ وضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wanda always wore the same faded blue ..... every day.

- ☒ a dress      ☐ b closet      ☐ c letter      ☐ d drawing

2. Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as ..... in the competition.

- ☐ a walls      ☐ b medals      ☐ c winners      ☐ d playgrounds

3. Wanda drew and ..... all the drawings in the competition.

- ☐ a moved      ☐ b sang      ☐ c spoke      ☐ d signed

4. Peggy and Maddie wrote a ..... to Wanda to apologize.

- ☐ a behavior      ☐ b letter      ☐ c dream      ☐ d closet



**5 Read and complete with words from the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات من القائمة:

playground - competition - ~~announce~~ - drawings

Miss Mason announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to <sup>1</sup> announce the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful <sup>2</sup> ..... of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the <sup>3</sup> ..... , but she wasn't there to receive her medal.

**6 Read and put the events in order:**

اقرأ وضع الاحداث في الترتيب:

- Peggy and Maddie annoyed Wanda in the playground.
- Wanda won the drawing competition.
- Peggy and Maddie promised to always speak up if there was bullying.
- ~~- Wanda told everyone about her one hundred dresses.~~
- Miss Mason read a letter from Wanda's dad.
- Peggy and Maddie wrote a letter to Wanda.

1. Wanda told everyone about her one hundred dresses.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

**7 Read and write T (true) or F (false):**

اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ:

1. Wanda had one hundred real dresses. ( X )
2. Peggy and Maddie were always kind to Wanda. ( )
3. Wanda won the annual drawing competition. ( )
4. Wanda's family moved to the big city. ( )
5. Miss Mason chose three girls as winners. ( )
6. Wanda's mom sent a letter to Miss Mason. ( )
7. Wanda wasn't there to receive her medal. ( )
8. Peggy and Maddie wrote an email to Wanda to apologize. ( )



## Review 2



on Units 4, 5 & 6

### Objectives of Review 2

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 5.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 5.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٥.

- To evaluate progress in Units 4 -5.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.



## ★ Units 4 - 5

### Unit 4

#### Places in Egypt أماكن في مصر



**Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar**

سوق / بازار خان الخليلي



**Nile River**

نهر النيل



**Grand Egyptian Museum**

المتحف المصري الكبير



**Pyramids**

الأهرامات



**Egyptian Museum**

المتحف المصري



**Cairo Tower**

برج القاهرة



**Siwa Oasis**

واحة سيوة

tour guide  
tourist

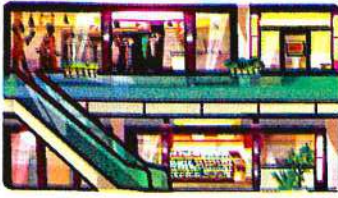
مرشد سياحي  
سائح

gift

هدية

Places

أماكن



shopping mall

مركز تسوق



school

مدرسة



library

مكتبة (للقراءة)



post office

مكتب بريد



museum

متحف



hospital

مستشفى

blog post

مدونة

adventure

مغامرة

visit

زيارة

plants

نباتات

St. Catherine Mountain جبل سانت كاترين

salt Lake

بحيرة الملح

South Sinai جنوب سيناء

sweet dates

تمر

Egypt مصر

desert

الصحراء

fun مرح

local food

الطعام المحلي

colorful كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان

olive oil

زيت الزيتون

rock صخرة

Daytime

النهار

old monastery دير قديم

Night time

الليل

nature الطبيعة



## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع | Past ماض | Present مضارع  | Past ماض |
|---------------|----------|----------------|----------|
| visit يزور    | visited  | build يبني     | built    |
| sail يبحر     | sailed   | meet يقابل     | met      |
| borrow يستعير | borrowed | ride يركب      | rode     |
| climb يتسلق   | climbed  | send يرسل      | sent     |
| book يحجز     | booked   | teach يدرس     | taught   |
|               |          | wake up يستيقظ | woke up  |
|               |          | wear يرتدي     | wore     |
|               |          | bring يحضر     | brought  |

### Language in use

قواعد لغوية

#### Prepositions of Place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Prepositions of place show **where** things are.

تستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتوضيح مكان شيء أو شخص بالنسبة لشيء آخر.

1 **in** في The cat is **in** the box.



2 **on** على The cat is **on** the box.



3 **in front of** أمام The cat is **in front of** the box.



4 **behind** خلف The cat is **behind** the box.



5 **next to** بجانب The cat is **next to** the box.



6 **between** بين **في المنتصف** (بين شيئين)

The cat is **between** the boxes.



# Key vocabulary



doctor طبيب



nurse ممرضة



teacher مدرس



engineer مهندس



firefighter رجل إطفاء



police officer ضابط شرطة

|                       |                    |                    |                  |
|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| mentor                | مرشد / مُوجِّه     | wooden chairs      | كراسي خشبية      |
| wildlife photographer | مصور الحياة البرية | gift               | هدية             |
| skilled carpenter     | نجار ماهر          | board              | لوح خشبي         |
| strong houses         | منازل قوية         | nail               | مسمار            |
| furniture             | أثاث               | carelessly         | بإهمال           |
| keys                  | مفاتيح             | regret             | ندم              |
| poor work             | عمل سيئ            | firefighter        | رجل إطفاء        |
| weak wood             | خشب ضعيف           | fire station       | محطة الإطفاء     |
| voice-over actor      | مؤدي صوتي          | protective uniform | زيّ حماية        |
| puppets               | دمى متحركة         | big red fire       | نار كبيرة وحمراء |



|              |                   |           |               |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------|---------------|
| right place  | المكان المناسب    | alarm     | إنذار / تنبيه |
| oxygen tanks | أسطوانات الأكسجين | danger    | خطر           |
| tools        | أدوات             | hero      | بطل           |
| saving lives | إنقاذ أرواح       | equipment | معدات         |
| water hoses  | خراطيم المياه     |           |               |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

##### Present مضارع

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| check   | يفحص         |
| design  | يصمم         |
| stop    | يتوقف        |
| save    | ينقذ / يحفظ  |
| wait    | ينتظر        |
| admire  | يعجب         |
| promise | يوعد         |
| repair  | يصلح         |
| hammer  | يدق بالمطرقة |
| protect | يحمي         |

##### Past ماض

|           |
|-----------|
| checked   |
| designed  |
| stopped   |
| saved     |
| waited    |
| admired   |
| promised  |
| repaired  |
| hammered  |
| protected |

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

##### Present مضارع

|         |               |
|---------|---------------|
| wear    | يرتدي         |
| grow up | يكبر          |
| become  | يصبح          |
| feel    | يشعر          |
| build   | يبني          |
| wear    | يرتدي         |
| ride    | يقود          |
| fight   | يكافح / يحارب |

##### Past ماض

|         |
|---------|
| wore    |
| grew up |
| became  |
| felt    |
| built   |
| wore    |
| rode    |
| fought  |

## Language in use

## Superlative adjectives

نستخدم صفات التفضيل العليا للمقارنة بين شخص أو شئ أو حيوان ومجموعة اشخاص أو اشياء أو حيوانات

باقي الجملة + est + الصفة + the + الاسم

- This is **the tallest** tree in the park.

► Examples:

هناك صفات بعض الصفات التي لا يضاف اليها **est** مثل **good bad**

good → جيد → **the best**  
bad → سي → **the worst**

لا حظ

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **e** نضيف **st** فقط

large → **the largest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن + متحرك + ساكن نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف **est**

big → **the biggest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف **y** + حرف ساكن نحذف **y** ونضيف **iest**

happy → **the happiest**

► Examples in Sentences:

- He is **the tallest** in the class. (هو أطول واحد في الفصل.)
- This is **the biggest** bag. (هذه أكبر حقيبة.)
- She is **the oldest** in the family. (هي الأكبر سنًا في العائلة.)

يجب دائما ان نضع **the** قبل صفة التفضيل العليا.



# Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Many people ride camels near the.....

- a** zoo                      **b** park                      **c** Pyramids                      **d** museum

2. It's ..... to ride camels there.

- a** healthy                      **b** boring                      **c** amazed                      **d** fun

3. We can visit the Egyptian.....

- a** tower                      **b** Museum                      **c** temple                      **d** tomb

4. The museum has many ..... to see.

- a** treasures                      **b** clothes                      **c** subjects                      **d** wood

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. People used giant ..... to build the Pyramids.

- a** wood                      **b** buildings                      **c** elephants                      **d** stones

2. People send letters and packages at the ..... to stay connected.

- a** post office                      **b** library                      **c** museum                      **d** hospital

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sick - learn - borrow - teach— mall

There are different places in my town. Young children go to school to ① .....  
They can ② ..... books from the library. When people feel ③ ....., they  
go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the shopping ④ ..... to buy different  
things.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I live in Aswan with my family. We live in a big house near the Nile. It has four big rooms. This is my living room! My family picture is on the wall. My cat likes to sit on the blue chair near my desk. I have a toy car. I put it beside the table. There is a lamp next to the TV. There is a plant between a book and a notebook.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about .....

- a** my room                      **b** senses                      **c** a picture                      **d** my family

2. The house is near the Nile and has .....

- a** a balcony                      **b** a garden                      **c** a library                      **d** four rooms

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does the family live? .....

4. What is next to the TV? .....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She has the ..... (**short**) hair in the group.

2. He is the ..... (**smart**) student in our class.

3. The bird is ..... (**front**) the cage.

4. The flowers are ..... (**on**) two trees.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where is the post office .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

A firefighter

hard - uniform - fire truck - stop fires - safe

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باستماعة  
الواردة في وحدات كتاب

**Bit by Bit**

**Unit**

**1**

## Lesson (1)

I'm Ahmed. I go to the park on the weekend. I play with my friends. We see flowers and trees. We hear the birds singing. We smell the flowers but we don't pick them. Mom made us some cake. It tastes delicious.

## Lesson (2)

I'm Salma. I'm 10 years old. I wake up at 6: am every day. I take a shower. I brush my teeth. I have breakfast. For breakfast, I have beans and eggs. I get dressed. I go to school by bus. I go home at 3:00 pm. I have lunch at 4:p.m.

## Al Azhar Test

Sarah helps her mom. She goes with her to the market. They buy fruit and vegetables. They cook delicious lunch.

## Test (1) - Unit 1

I'm Nada. I am in grade four. I have three meals every day. For breakfast, I have eggs and cheese. For lunch, I have

chicken and rice. Sometimes I have an apple as a snack. I have beans and eggs for dinner.

**Unit**

**2**

## Lesson (1)

I'm Mona. I volunteer at the Community park every Friday. I clean trash from the park. I plant flowers and trees. I put trash bins everywhere. I help my neighbors. I collect old clothes and give them to people who need them.

## Lesson (3)

Amr is a good student. He is in primary four. Amr is from the south of Egypt. He is from Aswan. Amr wears traditional clothes. He wears a galabeya. His father makes pottery. Amr loves his family.

## Al Azhar Test

Adam helps his community. He cleans trash from the streets. Adam plants trees in the park. Adam feeds the dogs and cats. He feels so happy.

## Test (2) - Unit 2

I'm Youssef. I'm in grade four. I'm from el-Saied. I wear traditional clothes. I wear a galabeya. My father works in a sugar cane factory. The factory makes sugar.

Unit

3

Lesson (1)

Omar's father works as a forest guide. He shows visitors the animals. I sometimes go with him. Visitors see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees. Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

Lesson (2)

Wild animals face different challenges. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They need clean water and safe places to live. Forest officers now work harder than before to protect these animals and their homes.

Lesson (4)

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Al Azhar Test

The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

Test (3) - Unit 3

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well. It is important to help them.

Review

1

Test (1 - 2 - 3)

My name is Ashraquat. I am 10 years old. I like helping our community. I volunteered to help in the park. We cleaned the streets and collect bottles.

Unit

4

Lesson (1)

Omar, a tour guide, welcomes Roberto to Egypt. They visit the Pyramids, take pictures, and ride camels. Omar suggests visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum to see treasures and learn history. Then, they plan to go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy gifts.

Al Azhar Test

Adel is 8 years old. He goes to school by bus. The school is next to the shopping mall.



Test (5) - Unit 4

My name is Roberto. This is my first time in Egypt, and I am very happy! I want to visit Luxor and Aswan to learn about the history. I also plan to sail on the Nile River. Egypt is full of amazing places.

Unit

5

Lesson (1)

There are many jobs. A doctor helps sick people. A teacher teaches students. A firefighter puts out fires. A police officer keeps the city safe. Every job is important. People work together to make life better for everyone.

Lesson (2)

Some people have amazing jobs. Hala is a teacher who helps students to be confident. Omar is a nature photographer. He takes photos of animals in forests. Rana is a puppet artist. She makes fun shows for children. Sami is a voice-over actor. He changes his voice for cartoons.

Lesson (3)

Lena was asked to color a wall at school. She thought no one would notice, so she painted it quickly and carelessly. Later, everyone saw the messy work. She felt embarrassed and learned to always do her best, even in small tasks.

Lessons (4&5)

Hany is a brave firefighter. He works at a fire station. He wears a strong uniform and a big helmet. When there is a fire, he rides the fire truck and helps people. He loves his job and saving lives.

Al Azhar Test

Omar is a firefighter. He drives a fire truck. Sami builds houses. A firefighter wears a helmet to protect his head.

Test (6)

Ahmed is a firefighter. He rides the fire truck when there is a fire. He wears a helmet and a protective uniform. Ahmed is brave.

Review

2

Test (4 - 5 - 6)

Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun. After that, we can visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too!

# ENGLISH

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

20  
26

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

4<sup>th</sup>  
PRIMARY  
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com





# Unit 1 Five senses

## Lesson 1



### Vocabulary

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| ممتاز.....    | ضخم.....                       |
| آمن.....      | عالى الصوت.....                |
| دخان.....     | لسان.....                      |
| حريق.....     | حديقة.....                     |
| صوت.....      | مدهش/رائع.....                 |
| موسيقى.....   | الرؤية/الإبصار.....            |
| شكل.....      | السمع.....                     |
| شهى/لذيذ..... | الشم.....                      |
| خشن.....      | كثير الألوان/زاهى الألوان..... |
| ناعم.....     | مهم.....                       |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present   | Past | Present         | Past |
|-----------|------|-----------------|------|
| يرى.....  |      | يتذوق.....      |      |
| يشم.....  |      | يلمس.....       |      |
| يسمع..... |      | يساعد.....      |      |
| يغنى..... |      | يحاول/يجرب..... |      |

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| كمية كبيرة من الماء..... | عادات صحية.....       |
| فصل.....                 | ذكي / منته.....       |
| رياضة.....               | يغسل بالفرشاة.....    |
| جسد.....                 | إفطار.....            |
| مسابقة.....              | طاقة.....             |
| اثناء.....               | عشاء.....             |
| وقت الفسحة.....          | يذهب للنوم مبكرا..... |
| بعد ذلك.....             | نوم / ينام.....       |
| طازج.....                | عقل / ذهن.....        |
| فيتامينات.....           | قوى.....              |
| حلوى.....                | اسنان.....            |
| يستحم.....               | بسيط.....             |
| كاف.....                 | تمارين.....           |
| قهوة.....                | عصير برتقال.....      |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present          | Past | Present   | Past |
|------------------|------|-----------|------|
| يتبع.....        |      | يأكل..... |      |
| يغسل اسنانه..... |      | يعطى..... |      |
| يغسل.....        |      | يزرع..... |      |
| يستمتع ب.....    |      | يشرب..... |      |
| يستيقظ.....      |      | يأخذ..... |      |
|                  |      | ينام..... |      |





# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: How many senses do we have? - B: Five .....
- a hands      b feet      c senses      d eyes
2. Senses help us ..... the world around us.
- a hear      b smell      c touch      d understand
3. I taste delicious food with my .....
- a eye      b tongue      c ear      d teeth
4. She ..... her teeth every day.
- a washes      b touches      c does      d brushes
5. Senses help us ..... safe.
- a stay      b make      c plant      d learn
6. Getting enough sleep helps the mind stay .....
- a sharp      b hard      c park      d early

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

energy - health - break - brown - plenty

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and ① ..... bread. These foods give her ② ..... for the day. At school, Sarah drinks ③ ..... of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during ④ ..... time.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our five senses are very important. I hear music and voices with my ears. I smell flowers in the garden with my nose. I taste delicious food with my tongue. I touch soft and hard things with my hands. Senses also help us stay safe. For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about.....

**a** food

**b** health

**c** senses

**d** music

2. Senses also help us stay.....

**a** sleep

**b** sick

**c** sharp

**d** safe

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. How can our senses help us stay safe?

-----

4. What do we do with the tongue?

-----

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. For breakfast, she ..... **(eat)** healthy food every day.

2. We ..... **(goes)** to bed early at 8:30 p.m.

3. They ..... **(sleeping)** for 9 hours every night.

4. That ..... **(help)** me do well at school every year.

5. He ..... **(visit)** his uncle every year.

6. I ..... **(uses)** my hands to touch my face.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

they grow fresh vegetables together

-----



# Lesson 3



## Vocabulary

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| رائع             | سوق                 |
| لذيذ             | جائع                |
| رائحة            | طعام                |
| بالخارج          | مطعم                |
| نفس              | مالك                |
| لحظة             | طماع                |
| جيب              | عملات معدنية        |
| ماهر/ ذكي        | صوت جالجلة او رنين  |
| بالداخل          | رائحة حسائك         |
| خفيف             | صوت عملاتك المعدنية |
| منبهر            | يتشارك              |
| استجابة/ ردة فعل | شخصيات              |
| بذكاء            | زمان ومكان قصة      |
| مشكلة            | نقود                |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present  | Past | Present    | Past |
|----------|------|------------|------|
| يدعو     |      | يتوقف      |      |
| يبيع     |      | يغلق       |      |
| يجلس     |      | يستمتع بـ  |      |
| يقول     |      | يضحك       |      |
| يشعر     |      | يشارك      |      |
| يفكر     |      | يصدق/ يؤمن |      |
| يرج/ يهز |      | يعرض       |      |

## Lesson 4



### Vocabulary

|            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| روتين يومي | التالي    |
| نفس الشيء  | ثم        |
| متضمنًا    | بعد ذلك   |
| وجبة خفيفة | أخيرًا    |
| أولاً      | حياة صحية |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present  | Past | Present       | Past |
|----------|------|---------------|------|
| يدرس     |      | يرتدى الملابس |      |
| يدع/يترك |      | يذهب          |      |
| يخبر     |      | يحافظ على     |      |

## Activities

### Lessons 3&4



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went to the ..... to buy fresh vegetables.

- ☐ a school      ☐ b park      ☐ c cinema      ☐ d market

2. The ..... child ate all the cookies.

- ☐ a clever      ☐ b greedy      ☐ c healthy      ☐ d tired

3. He is the ..... of the car. It's his car.

- ☐ a clouds      ☐ b owner      ☐ c police      ☐ d restaurant



## Dictation & Exercises

4. Let's ..... this sandwich. You look hungry.

**a** break

**b** pay

**c** do

**d** share

5. The children ..... their cat in the morning.

**a** learn

**b** feed

**c** swim

**d** eat

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**owner - restaurant - share - offered - sound**

One day, Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a ❶ ..... He sat outside, enjoying the smell of it. The ❷ ..... asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the ❸ ..... of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him in to ❹ ..... the soup.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Having a daily routine is important. I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. At 7 am, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During break time, I eat a healthy snack and drink water. I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wake up early at ..... a.m

**a** eight

**b** five

**c** six

**d** seven

2. The underlined word "where" refers to the .....

**a** daily routine

**b** water

**c** break time

**d** school

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the best title of the passage?

-----

4. Why is sleeping early important?

-----

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We .....(sees) with our eyes.
2. Ali .....(eat) healthy food every day.
3. My sister and I .....(sleeps) early every night.
4. Layla .....(drink) water every morning.
5. He .....(brush) his teeth every day.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

i go to school on foot

-----



# Test on Unit 1

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I play sports for .....

- a** three hours      **b** two hours      **c** one hour      **d** four hours

2. In the ....., I take a shower.

- a** evening      **b** morning      **c** night      **d** afternoon

3. I ..... at 9:00 p.m.

- a** go to bed      **b** do my homework      **c** have dinner      **d** take a shower

4. Sleeping early keeps me .....

- a** fit      **b** good      **c** sad      **d** healthy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. If we smell smoke, we know there's a .....

- a** classroom      **b** break      **c** food      **d** fire

2. I ..... music and voices with my ears.

- a** taste      **b** see      **c** hear      **d** touch

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

snack - study - lunch - back - teach

At 7 am, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit. Then, I go to school, where I ① ..... and play with my friends. During break time, I eat a healthy ② ..... and drink water. After school, I have ③ ..... with my family. Finally, I go ④ ..... home.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant. He sat outside, enjoying the smell of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him in to share the soup.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The text is about Goha's great .....  
 a food                      b restaurant                      c meal                      d smell
- The underlined word "him" refers to .....  
 a owner                      b Goha                      c restaurant                      d meal

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Summarize the passage in one sentence.  
 -----

- Why did Goha sit outside the restaurant?  
 -----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I ..... (**eats**) breakfast every morning.
- He ..... (**playing**) football on Saturdays.
- They ..... (**watches**) cartoons in the evening.
- She ..... (**wash**) her hands before meals.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

they play sports after school -----

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Guiding words**

routine - bed - food

**Your Healthy Life**



# Unit 2 My Community

## Lesson 1



### Vocabulary

|                              |                   |
|------------------------------|-------------------|
| ..... المجتمع                | ..... متطوع       |
| ..... حديقة مجتمعية          | ..... أيام الجمعة |
| ..... ملابس قديمة            | ..... أيام السبت  |
| ..... جيران                  | ..... زجاجات      |
| ..... شارع                   | ..... بط          |
| ..... أحياناً                | ..... كل شخص      |
| ..... كلا/ كلاهما (الاثنتين) |                   |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present     | Past | Present         | Past |
|-------------|------|-----------------|------|
| ..... يجمع  |      | ..... يعطي      |      |
| ..... يزرع  |      | ..... يطعم      |      |
| ..... ينظف  |      | ..... يؤدي/يقوم |      |
| ..... يتطوع |      | ..... يجعل/يصنع |      |
| ..... يحدث  |      | ..... يشعر      |      |

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| مشاكل       | عدد سيارات أقل      |
| حركة المرور | سلة مهملات          |
| حلول        | أرضية (شارع مثلا)   |
| يحل مشكلة   | قذر - متسخ          |
| بدلا من ذلك | الثاني              |
| الأول       | بعد الآن - لم يعد   |
| بسرعة       | استحمام لفترة طويلة |
| خاصة        | لأن                 |
| طريق        |                     |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present      | Past |
|---------|------|--------------|------|
| يناقش   |      | يغادر - يترك |      |
| يتحرك   |      | يضع          |      |
| يحل     |      | يرمي         |      |
| يشغل    |      | عنده - يمتلك |      |
| يصلح    |      |              |      |



# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The boys ..... clothes to help neighbors.  
 a feed                      b collect                      c plant                      d volunteer
2. I ..... the bus to school every day.  
 a feed                      b plant                      c collect                      d take
3. You should ..... air pollution.  
 a eat                      b play                      c reduce                      d cool
4. Do you know how to ..... this problem?  
 a play                      b talk                      c solve                      d throw
5. We don't throw trash ..... the ground.  
 a of                      b on                      c for                      d from
6. The children ..... flowers and trees.  
 a talk                      b plant                      c help                      d fix

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plants - bottles - job - feeds - feels

My sister Sara volunteers at the community park. She does a great ① .....  
 She collects old ② ..... from the streets. She ③ ..... the dogs and  
 cats. She ④ ..... flowers and trees at the community park.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Adel. I help my community. I help my neighbors every Friday. I clean trash from the streets. I put bins everywhere. My neighbors don't throw trash on the ground. Our street is very clean. I collect plastic bottles from the street. I know how to solve this problem. My sister Hana helps the community, too. She collects old clothes and gives them to people who need them. I feel so happy.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Adel helps his .....

- a** books                      **b** friends                      **c** neighbors                      **d** uncles

2. Adel cleans the streets from .....

- a** computers                      **b** trash                      **c** neighbors                      **d** pens

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. How does Hana help her community? .....

4. When does Adel help his neighbors? .....

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We ..... (**doesn't**) throw trash on the ground.

2. Do ..... (**she**) collect old clothes?

3. I ..... (**takes**) the bus to school.

4. Cars don't ..... (**moves**) quickly in the morning.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

they volunteer at the community garden



# Lesson 3



## Vocabulary

|                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| ..... شمال          | ..... عمامة                |
| ..... جنوب          | ..... عيد الربيع           |
| ..... عادات وتقاليد | ..... حصاد قصب السكر       |
| ..... ثقافة         | ..... فخار                 |
| ..... سجاد ملون     | ..... جلابية               |
| ..... حدث           | ..... زي تقليدي            |
| ..... الدلتا        | ..... البحر الأحمر         |
| ..... الصعيد        | ..... البحر الأبيض المتوسط |
| ..... النوبة        | ..... ألوان زاهية (مضيئة)  |
| ..... مناطق خاصة    | ..... تصميمات              |
| ..... زينة          | ..... بنطلون               |
| ..... أرز           | ..... فستان                |
| ..... قطن           | ..... اختلاف               |
| ..... مصانع         | ..... سوي/معا              |
| ..... مصنوعات يدوية |                            |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present     | Past | Present      | Past |
|-------------|------|--------------|------|
| ..... يعمل  |      | ..... ينسج   |      |
| ..... يحتفل |      | ..... يخبر   |      |
| ..... يشارك |      | ..... يكون   |      |
| ..... يحب   |      | ..... يكونوا |      |

## Lesson 4



### Vocabulary

|                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| مذكرة يومية.....      | تاريخ مليء بالأحداث (عريق)..... |
| تاريخ.....            | محطة قطار.....                  |
| حي سكن.....           | صور قديمة.....                  |
| مدرسة قديمة.....      | منذ سنوات مضت.....              |
| سوق (سوبر ماركت)..... | كُشك.....                       |
| مبنى.....             | أطفال.....                      |
| حديقة.....            | اليوم.....                      |
| مزرعة.....            | المول تجارى للتسوق.....         |
| مكتبة.....            | ماضى.....                       |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present    | Past | Present   | Past |
|------------|------|-----------|------|
| يساعد..... |      | يعرض..... |      |
| يلعب.....  |      | يعرف..... |      |
|            |      | يرى.....  |      |

## Activities

### Lessons 3&4



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egypt has two special ....., they are el-Delta and Upper Egypt.

- ☐ a stalls ☐ b regions ☐ c clothes ☐ d books

2. In el-Saeid they make ..... They use it for cooking.

- ☐ a clothes ☐ b pottery ☐ c outfits ☐ d dresses

3. He is proud ..... his rich history

- ☐ a on ☐ b for ☐ c of ☐ d in



## Dictation & Exercises

4. In the old market, there were some wooden .....

**a** stalls

**b** sugar

**c** stories

**d** rice

5. In Egypt, people ..... the spring festival

**a** grow

**b** use

**c** celebrate

**d** eat

6. Farmers ..... rice and cotton.

**a** tell

**b** volunteer

**c** grow

**d** stand

7. In Upper Egypt, men wear a ..... on their heads.

**a** pants

**b** turban

**c** shirt

**d** dress

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sky - gardens - sold - stories - stalls

I'm Hatem. My grandpa is seventy years old. He is kind. He told me some old <sup>1</sup> ..... . He said that there was an old market here. There were some wooden <sup>2</sup> ..... . People <sup>3</sup> ..... fresh fruits and vegetables. There were small houses with beautiful <sup>4</sup> ..... .

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Wearing traditional clothes is very important in our culture. Most people in Egypt wear galabeyas. Galabeyas are traditional outfits. They wear galabeyas for special events. In el-Delta the outfit is different from Upper Egypt. In Upper Egypt, men wear turbans on their heads. Women wear colorful dresses in el-Delta. Women are known for making clothes.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most people in Egypt wear .....

**a** shirts

**b** galabeyas

**c** hats

**d** books

2. In el-saied, men wear ..... on their heads.

**a** galabeyas

**b** turbans

**c** dresses

**d** shirts

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When do people wear galabeyas?

-----

4. What are women in el-Delta known for?

-----

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He ..... (**like**) loud noise. He doesn't like it.

2. The weather is ..... (**regular**) today. There is a storm.

3. Does ..... (**they**) wear a stylish dress?

4. She doesn't ..... (**likes**) pollution.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

does he take the bus to school

-----



# Test on Unit 2

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Akram is in primary .....

**a** 4

**b** 5

**c** 6

**d** 3

2. Akram's father is a .....

**a** teacher

**b** farmer

**c** doctor

**d** vet

3. Akram's father grows .....

**a** flowers

**b** cotton

**c** trees

**d** beans

4. Akram is proud of his .....

**a** uncle

**b** friend

**c** father

**d** sister

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In our community, we live in a quiet .....

**a** photo

**b** neighborhood

**c** culture

**d** stall

2. We put trash in .....

**a** pens

**b** balls

**c** bins

**d** cars

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

on - streets - proud - neighbors - put

You should keep your community clean. You should always be **1** ..... of your community's history. Everyone should help their **2** ..... . You should collect trash from the **3** ..... . You shouldn't throw trash **4** ..... the ground.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara is a kind girl. She loves helping people in her neighborhood. Every Friday, she helps her grandma clean the garden. She also helps her friends carry books to school. One day, Sara saw an old man crossing the road. She ran to help him.

The old man smiled and said, "Thank you!". Sara felt happy. Helping the community means doing good things for others. It can be small, like cleaning the trash or helping the friends. When we help, we make our place better.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara is a ..... girl.

**a** bad

**b** sad

**c** kind

**d** small

2. Sara helped an ..... man on the road.

**a** ugly

**b** old

**c** small

**d** tall

## B. Answer the following questions:

3. How did Sara feel after helping the old man? .....

4. What did Sara do on Friday? .....

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Amr ..... (**go**) to school by bike.

2. They ..... (**doesn't**) take long showers.

3. .... (**Does**) you turn off the water?

4. He ..... (**don't**) throw trash on the ground.

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

i like helping the community

## 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

How to help your community

Guiding words

collect - bins - plant



## Lesson 1



## Vocabulary

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| أسد         | حديقة الغابة |
| قرد         | مرشد الغابة  |
| فيل         | ثقل          |
| زرافة       | رقبة         |
| حمار وحشى   | رصاصي        |
| دب          | أيضا - كذلك  |
| خرطوم الفيل | مذهل         |
| ذيل         | اوراق الشجر  |
| مخطط        | حاد          |
| منقط        | زائر         |
| غابة        | شيق          |
| فرو         | برنامج       |
| مخالب       | أرض          |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present   | Past | Present     | Past |
|-----------|------|-------------|------|
| يستخدم    |      | يقابل       |      |
| يضع دائرة |      | يوضح - يعرض |      |
| يرش       |      | يجري        |      |
| يتسلق     |      | يصطاد       |      |
| يعمل      |      | يعرف        |      |

## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| الطقس.....   | حيوان اليف.....       |
| الجميع.....  | البراري - البرية..... |
| ينبغي.....   | مساحة.....            |
| يومية.....   | ضباط.....             |
| شهريا.....   | قفص.....              |
| حارس.....    | رعاية خاصة.....       |
| أقوى.....    | انتباه.....           |
| أصغر.....    | تحديات.....           |
| طازج.....    | مالك.....             |
| نظيف.....    | حوض.....              |
| طريق.....    | صحي.....              |
| سنويا.....   | طبيب بيطري.....       |
| أسبوعيا..... | آمن.....              |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present           | Past | Present        | Past |
|-------------------|------|----------------|------|
| يناقش.....        |      | يفحص.....      |      |
| يمرن - يدرّب..... |      | يحمي.....      |      |
| يصل.....          |      | يتجنب.....     |      |
| يواجه.....        |      | يحافظ على..... |      |
| ينشئ.....         |      | يطعم.....      |      |
| يبقى.....         |      | يجعل.....      |      |
| يعيش.....         |      |                |      |



# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The ..... has a spotted coat. It eats leaves from tall trees  
 a lion                      b giraffe                      c bear                      d zebra
- I watch a ..... about animals on TV.  
 a program                      b cloth                      c radio                      d book
- The elephant has a ..... trunk.  
 a heavy                      b thick                      c long                      d striped

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

around - health - claws - spaces - stay

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger <sup>1</sup> ..... than monkeys to move <sup>2</sup> ..... Lions eat a lot of food to <sup>3</sup> ..... stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often check their <sup>4</sup> .....

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need some exercise. Rabbits eat **fresh** vegetables. They are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals. Many people like keeping pets at home. They should look after them.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about ..... about animals.  
 a eating                      b feeding                      c caring                      d washing
- The word "fresh" means.....  
 a good                      b fast                      c bad                      d sick

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What do pets need daily ?

-----

4. What do birds need?

-----

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Ali is ..... (**lazy**) than Ahmed.
2. He is ..... (**tall**) his friends.
3. The weather today is ..... (**hot**) than yesterday.
4. Elephants are ..... (**big**) than dogs.
5. The eggplant is ..... (**than**) most delicious plant.
6. My friend Hany is ..... (**thinnest**) than Adel.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

that s right!

-----



### Lesson 3



#### Vocabulary

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| بأمان            | خطر                    |
| ودود             | ضعيف                   |
| حفرة             | خدعة                   |
| علامات           | كهف                    |
| قريب - بالقرب من | يتظاهر                 |
| الاخرين          | حكيم                   |
| مرة اخرى         | اثر الاقدام            |
| سريع             | زُغِب (مغطى بفرو ناعم) |
| جبل              | ماهر                   |
| باقية - متبقية   | خطأ                    |

#### Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present  | Past |
|---------|------|----------|------|
| يتظاهر  |      | يعرف     |      |
| يزور    |      | يدخل الى |      |
| يرد     |      | يأتي     |      |
| يتعلم   |      | يرى      |      |
| يخدع    |      | يفكر     |      |
| يلاحظ   |      | يستلقي   |      |
| ينادي   |      | يسمع     |      |
| يموت    |      | يقف      |      |

## Lesson 4



### Vocabulary

|                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| ..... حول          | ..... مهدد بالانقراض |
| ..... عالم         | ..... النمر العربي   |
| ..... هام          | ..... متبقية - باقية |
| ..... حقيقة        | ..... موطن - بيئة    |
| ..... الشرق الاوسط | ..... تلوث           |
| ..... جميل         | ..... يختفي          |
| ..... سبب          | ..... للأبد          |
| ..... البحر الأحمر | ..... انواع - فصائل  |
| ..... عشب بحري     | ..... حيوان الأطوم   |
|                    | ..... شبكة الصيد     |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present     | Past | Present     | Past |
|-------------|------|-------------|------|
| ..... يختفي |      | ..... يحمي  |      |
| ..... يبني  |      | ..... يوقف  |      |
| ..... يختار |      | ..... يتصرف |      |
| ..... يعلم  |      | ..... يحدث  |      |
| ..... يكتب  |      | ..... ينشئ  |      |
|             |      | ..... يحتاج |      |



# Activities Lessons 3&4



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This lion is very old. He can't.....anymore.

**a** swim

**b** hunt

**c** go

**d** walk

2. They went into the..... in that mountain.

**a** zoo

**b** school

**c** cave

**d** tree

3. Many butterfly species are.....

**a** endangered

**b** called

**c** build

**d** habitats

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

grass - hunt - endangered - pollution - gentle

Yesterday, I read about the Red Sea Dugong. It is an ① ..... animal in Egypt. These ② ..... sea animals eat sea ③ ..... They are in danger because of ④ ..... and fishing nets.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Many animals heard about the sick lion. One by one, they went into his cave to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was catching and eating each visitor.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about the.....

**a** fox

**b** leopard

**c** visitors

**d** lion

2. The word "sick" means.....

**a** ill

**b** amazing

**c** cold

**d** expensive

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What happened to the animals?

-----

4. Is it a good trick?

-----

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Point..... ( **in** ) the animal with the long neck.

2. Lions hunt animals ..... ( **to** ) night.

3. Would you like to ..... ( **eats** ) some rice?

4. It must ..... ( **being** ) amazing to see some animals there.

5. Many animals are in ..... ( **dangerous** ) of disappearing.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

he didn't go into the cave

-----



# Test on Unit 3

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Pets need daily ..... from their owners.  
☐ a care                      ☐ b feed                      ☐ c protect                      ☐ d safe
- Dogs need some .....  
☐ a cages                      ☐ b tanks                      ☐ c exercise                      ☐ d air
- Rabbits eat .....vegetables.  
☐ a attention                      ☐ b health                      ☐ c bad                      ☐ d fresh
- Birds need cleaner .....  
☐ a tanks                      ☐ b cages                      ☐ c exercise                      ☐ d fruit

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Vets often ..... the animals' health.  
☐ a build                      ☐ b make                      ☐ c find                      ☐ d check
- The zebra ..... in groups.  
☐ a writes                      ☐ b runs                      ☐ c swims                      ☐ d cooks

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**kindness - habitats - care - better - create**

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of ① ..... make our world ② ..... When we ③ ..... for animals, we ④ ..... a safer place for them.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't hunt. He tricked animals and pretended to be sick in his cave. He called to the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way footprints. He didn't go into the cave and ran away safely.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about.....

- a** schools      **b** checking health      **c** hunting animals      **d** a trick

2. The fox was.....

- a** wise      **b** sick      **c** old      **d** tall

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Which animal tricked the other animals?

-----

4. How did the fox know the trick?

-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Vegetables ..... (**is**) healthier than cakes.

2. Rahma is ..... (**tall**) than Maha.

3. Cars are faster ..... (**then**) bikes.

4. Lions are ..... (**big**) than cats.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

there was an old lion

-----

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The Arabian Leopard

Guiding words

endangered - remain

-----  
-----  
-----



# Unit 4 Egypt My Homeland

## Lesson 1



### Vocabulary

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| .....قمة/أعلى  | .....سوق/بازار خان الخليلي |
| .....رائع/مدهش | .....الأهرامات             |
| .....عملاق     | .....نهر النيل             |
| .....حجر       | .....المتحف المصري الكبير  |
| .....بالقرب من | .....برج القاهرة           |
| .....سوق       | .....واحة سيوة             |
| .....يستكشف    | .....مرشد سياحي            |
| .....كنز       | .....سائح                  |
| .....التاريخ   | .....المتحف المصري         |
| .....مزدحم     | .....هدية                  |
| .....كثير من   | .....بلد                   |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present    | Past | Present   | Past |
|------------|------|-----------|------|
| .....يزور  |      | .....يأخذ |      |
| .....يبحر  |      | .....يركب |      |
| .....يبنى  |      | .....يجد  |      |
| .....يقابل |      |           |      |

# Lessons

2 & 3



## Vocabulary

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| مركز تسوق.....       | مطعم.....         |
| مدرسة.....           | يستعير.....       |
| مكتب بريد.....       | متصل.....         |
| مكتبة (للقراءة)..... | مريض.....         |
| متحف.....            | هام/ مهم.....     |
| مستشفى.....          | مختلف.....        |
| مدينة.....           | صغار السن.....    |
| طالب.....            | حائط.....         |
| ممرضة.....           | سيارة لعبة.....   |
| طرد.....             | نبات.....         |
| طبيب.....            | يتعلم.....        |
| رسالة/ خطاب.....     | غرفة المعيشة..... |
| متجر/ محل.....       | مصباح.....        |
| مدرس.....            | كراسة.....        |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present   | Past | Present     | Past |
|-----------|------|-------------|------|
| يرسل..... |      | يستعير..... |      |
| يأكل..... |      | يعيش.....   |      |
| يدرس..... |      | يتحدث.....  |      |





# Activities Lessons 1,2 &3



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Students go to ..... every day to learn new things.

- a** post office      **b** hospital      **c** restaurant      **d** school

2. We ..... letters and packages at the post office.

- a** teach      **b** send      **c** build      **d** meet

3. The Egyptian ..... is full of amazing history. We see many treasures.

- a** Tower      **b** Bazaar      **c** Museum      **d** Oasis

4. The ..... is full of people buying clothes, toys, and food.

- a** shopping mall      **b** library      **c** school      **d** hospital

5. The tourist smiles as he ..... a camel.

- a** drives      **b** takes      **c** rides      **d** builds

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

of - gifts - go - guide - explore

Tourists visit the market near the town. They ① ..... different shops. They buy ② ..... and take pictures. They see things from the country and taste new food. A tour ③ ..... talks about the city. The market is always full ④ ..... people and sounds. It is a fun and busy place.

**3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There's a beautiful garden in ..... (**next**) of our house.
2. My school is ..... (**front**) the park and the library.
3. The pencil is ..... (**on**) the pencil case. It is inside.
4. The lamp is ..... (**between**) to the bed.
5. The cat is sleeping ..... (**in**) the chair.
6. My little brother hid ..... (**between**) the sofa. I couldn't see him.
7. Rox, my dog, always sits in front ..... (**for**) the chairs.
8. The bus stops ..... (**front**) the school every morning.

**4 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. where will tourists go to buy gifts

-----

2. Look at the tall Cairo tower

-----



## Lesson 4



### Vocabulary

|                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| مدونة.....              | دافئ.....        |
| زيارة.....              | بارد.....        |
| جبل سانت كاترين.....    | لأن.....         |
| جنوب سيناء.....         | شعبي/ مشهور..... |
| مصر.....                | زائر.....        |
| مرح.....                | ملابس.....       |
| ملون/ زاهي الألوان..... | طبيعي.....       |
| صخرة.....               | شمال.....        |
| دير قديم.....           | الطقس.....       |
| الطبيعة.....            | تاريخي.....      |
| مغامرة.....             | مبكراً.....      |
| نباتات.....             | ممطر.....        |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present     | Past | Present    | Past |
|-------------|------|------------|------|
| يتسلق.....  |      | يرتدى..... |      |
| يستيقظ..... |      |            |      |

## Lesson 5



### Vocabulary

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| بحيرة الملح.....   | طازج.....        |
| تمر.....           | ممتاز.....       |
| الصحراء.....       | سعر.....         |
| الطعام المحلي..... | الصيف.....       |
| زيت الزيتون.....   | جاكت (معطف)..... |
| النهار.....        | الليل.....       |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present   | Past | Present | Past |
|-----------|------|---------|------|
| يحبز      |      | يخطر    |      |
| يسبح/يعوم |      |         |      |

# A

## ctivities

## Lessons 4&5



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Many people write about their ..... to South Sinai.

- a** blog      **b** fun      **c** nature      **d** visit

2. We enjoyed the ..... flowers along the way.

- a** old      **b** historical      **c** early      **d** colorful

3. The monastery is ..... and very old.

- a** rainy      **b** natural      **c** historical      **d** rainy

4. The weather was ..... so we wore warm clothes.

- a** sunny      **b** cold      **c** rainy      **d** hot

5. We read a ..... about Siwa Oasis before we go.

- a** blog post      **b** litter      **c** rock      **d** monastery

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**adventure - natural - monastery - climb - nature**

We visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai. We <sup>1</sup> ..... the mountain in the morning. At the top, we see plants, rocks, and an old <sup>2</sup> ..... . The weather is cold, but the view is amazing. Many visitors come to enjoy the <sup>3</sup> ..... world. It is a great <sup>4</sup> ..... !



## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

On Friday, Ahmed and his family go on a trip to a natural place near their town. They walk along the way and see many plants, rocks, and a small pond. The weather is warm and sunny. Ducks swim in the pond, and they take pictures of them. They eat lunch outside. Mom uses a pan to cook eggs. After lunch, they throw trash in the bin to keep the place clean. It is a fun day!

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather is ..... and sunny.

**a** rainy

**b** cold

**c** windy

**d** warm

2. Mom uses a ..... to cook eggs.

**a** pot

**b** spoon

**c** pan

**d** basket

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. When do Ahmed and his family go on a trip?

-----

4. Why do they throw trash in the bin?

-----

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. at the top we take great pictures

-----

2. What can people see in South Sinai

-----

# Test on Unit 4

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. John is from .....

- ☐ a Egypt      ☐ b England      ☐ c America      ☐ d Canada

2. He is ..... years old.

- ☐ a nine      ☐ b ten      ☐ c eleven      ☐ d eight

3. He wants to visit .....

- ☐ a America      ☐ b Sinai      ☐ c Aswan      ☐ d Hurghada

4. He wants to see ..... there.

- ☐ a big mountains      ☐ b old museums      ☐ c colorful fish      ☐ d bazaars

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. St. Catherine ..... is very popular with tourists.

- ☐ a Temple      ☐ b Oasis      ☐ c Museum      ☐ d Mountain

2. Tourists sail on the ..... to see the beautiful view.

- ☐ a Pyramids      ☐ b Siwa Oasis      ☐ c Nile River      ☐ d Egyptian Museum

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm – about – book – visit – desert

At schools, students learn about Egypt's history. They talk ① ..... the pyramids, old monasteries, and giant stones. Teachers teach about ② ..... places, colorful plants, and the Nile River. Lots of visitors ③ ..... trips in the summer because the weather is ④ .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Every month, I go to Alexandria with my family. We visit the library and the Qaitbay Citadel. The city is busy, but full of fun and history. We eat fresh fish by the sea. We take many photos and ride bikes. We also buy gifts for our friends. It is a long day, but I love every minute. Alexandria is a beautiful city by the sea.



## Dictation & Exercises

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We go to Alexandria .....

**a** every day

**b** every month

**c** every year

**d** every week

2. Alexandria is .....

**a** empty

**b** busy

**c** modern

**d** horrible

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do you visit in Alexandria?

-----

4. Where do you eat fresh fish?

-----

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The flowers are ..... (**on**) the vase.

2. My desk is in ..... (**between**) the window. I like the view!

3. The park in ..... (**behind**) to the post office.

4. The store is ..... (**front**) the restaurant and the bank.

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

Welcome to the siwa Oasis -----

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

#### A visit to South Sinai

#### Guiding questions

1. When did you visit South Sinai?
2. What did you see in South Sinai?
3. Who went with you?

-----  
-----  
-----

# Unit 5 A Day at Work

## Lesson 1



### Vocabulary

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| طبيب        | حرائق        |
| ممرضة       | وظيفة        |
| مدرس        | معطف         |
| مهندس       | خوذة         |
| رجل إطفاء   | مبنى         |
| ضابط شرطة   | رعاية/ يعتني |
| أزياء       | هام          |
| يصمم/ تصميم | طلاب         |
| زي رسمي     | مرضى         |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present    | Past | Present  | Past |
|------------|------|----------|------|
| يفحص       |      | يساعد    |      |
| يصمم       |      | يعتني بـ |      |
| يتوقف      |      | يرتدي    |      |
| ينقذ/ يحفظ |      | يتحدث عن |      |



## Lesson 2



### Vocabulary

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| صوت عالي.....          | مرشد/مُوجِّه.....       |
| شخصيات.....            | مصور الحياة البرية..... |
| صغير السن.....         | مؤدي صوتي.....          |
| درجات عالية.....       | دمى متحركة.....         |
| صور.....               | طبيب.....               |
| أماكن بعيدة.....       | شجاع.....               |
| قصص.....               | شيق.....                |
| ضحكة عالية.....        | حيوانات برية.....       |
| مثير.....              | مدة طويلة.....          |
| كرتون/رسوم متحركة..... | ابتسامة.....            |
| خجول.....              | العرض.....              |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present       | Past | Present     | Past |
|---------------|------|-------------|------|
| يحصل على..... |      | ينتظر.....  |      |
| يشعر.....     |      | يعمل.....   |      |
| يصنع.....     |      | يستخدم..... |      |
| يجد.....      |      | يتعلم.....  |      |
|               |      | يصبح.....   |      |

# Activities

## Lessons 1&2



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali An ..... takes care of sick people.

- a** engineer      **b** nurse      **c** firefighter      **d** photographer

2. Salma uses ..... to tell stories.

- a** mentors      **b** puppets      **c** doctors      **d** actors

3. A ..... takes pictures of animals.

- a** dentist      **b** teacher      **c** wildlife photographer      **d** nurse

4. The ..... makes voices for cartoons.

- a** firefighter      **b** voice-over actor      **c** scientist      **d** pilot

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**teacher - helmet - doctor - puppets - designs**

Omar is a firefighter. He wears a red ① ..... Sara is a ② ..... She helps sick people. Ali is an engineer. He ③ ..... new buildings. Salma works with ④ ..... to make children happy. Talia is a nurse. She cares for patients.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Adel is a voice-over actor. He works with cartoons. He can make his voice sound very high or very low. He likes to make children laugh. Sometimes, he talks very fast. He loves his job very much!

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adel is a/an .....

- a** doctor      **b** engineer  
**c** voice-over actor      **d** photographer

2. Adel likes his job because.....

- a** he helps people      **b** he makes children laugh  
**c** he wears a uniform      **d** he makes puppets



## Dictation & Exercises

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who does Adel work with?

-----

4. What can Adel do with his voice?

-----

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the ..... (**big**) animal in the zoo.

2. Today is the ..... (**hot**) day of the year.

3. Hisham is ..... (**that**) cleverest boy in class.

4. What's the ..... (**longer**) animal in the world?

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

my friend is a nurse

-----

### Lesson 3



### Vocabulary

|                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| ..... مسمار           | ..... نجار ماهر   |
| ..... بإهمال          | ..... منازل قوية  |
| ..... ندم             | ..... أثاث        |
| ..... قرية            | ..... مفاتيح      |
| ..... جميل            | ..... عمل سيئ     |
| ..... مدة الحياة      | ..... شبابيك      |
| ..... أمر             | ..... أبواب       |
| ..... قوي             | ..... خشب ضعيف    |
| ..... العمل بجد       | ..... كراسي خشبية |
| ..... الراحة / الباقي | ..... طاولات      |
| ..... حريض            | ..... هدية        |
| ..... مشغول           | ..... لوح خشبي    |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present            | Past | Present     | Past |
|--------------------|------|-------------|------|
| ..... يصلح         |      | ..... يعجب  |      |
| ..... يدق بالمطرقة |      | ..... يسافر |      |
| ..... يتذكر        |      | ..... يقرر  |      |
| ..... يبني         |      | ..... يوافق |      |
| ..... يزرع         |      | ..... يبدو  |      |
| ..... يعطي         |      | ..... يوعد  |      |



# Lessons

4 & 5



## Vocabulary

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| ..... إنقاذ أرواح       | ..... رجل المطافئ       |
| ..... محلي              | ..... محطة الإطفاء      |
| ..... ثقیل              | ..... زِيّ حماية        |
| ..... خوزة              | ..... خراطيم المياه     |
| ..... فخور              | ..... إنذار / تنبيه     |
| ..... وظائف فن طي الورق | ..... خطر               |
| ..... مستعد             | ..... معدات             |
| ..... خاص               | ..... نار كبيرة وحمرء   |
| ..... مجتمع             | ..... المكان المناسب    |
| ..... اختلاف            | ..... أسطوانات الأكسجين |
|                         | ..... أدوات             |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present    | Past | Present         | Past |
|------------|------|-----------------|------|
| ..... يضع  |      | ..... يرتدي     |      |
| ..... يقود |      | ..... يحافظ على |      |

# Activities

## Lessons 3-4&5



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A carpenter uses ..... to build tables and chairs.

- a** fire truck      **b** wood      **c** oxygen      **d** puppet

2. A firefighter wears a ..... to protect his head.

- a** helmet      **b** uniform      **c** hammer      **d** ladder

3. The doctor cleans and checks the ..... every day.

- a** wood      **b** fires      **c** equipment      **d** chairs

4. Sami wanted to ..... his house and make it beautiful again.

- a** break      **b** repair      **c** forget      **d** burn

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**tools - tired - proud - save - uniform**

Hassan is a firefighter. He wears a special **1** ..... when he works. He uses different **2** ..... like ladders and water hoses. Sometimes he feels **3** ....., but he still goes to help people. He is always proud to **4** ..... lives.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Karim is a carpenter. He works in a small workshop. He builds chairs, doors, and tables using wood. Karim always checks his work carefully. He wants to do his best every time. When he finishes a chair, he looks at it with a big smile. People love his furniture because it is strong and beautiful. Karim believes that working hard makes life better for everyone.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Karim builds.....

- a** cars      **b** tables and chairs      **c** fire trucks      **d** clothes



## Dictation & Exercises

2. People love his furniture .....

**a** it is strong and beautiful.

**b** it's cheap.

**c** he uses machines.

**d** he is fast.

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Karim smile when he finishes a chair?

-----

4. What does Karim believe?

-----

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This chair is the ..... (**strong**) in the shop.

2. Yesterday was the ..... (**colder**) day for working outside.

3. It's the ..... (**heavy**) bag in the classroom.

4. My grandpa is ..... (**there**) oldest person in my family.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

omar helps people every day

-----

# Test on Unit 5

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c:

استمع وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Amr's dad is a/an .....

- a** farmer      **b** teacher      **c** engineer      **d** nurse

2. He designs .....

- a** cars      **b** buildings      **c** farms      **d** bikes

3. He wears a vest and a ..... at work.

- a** skirt      **b** hat      **c** jacket      **d** helmet

4. He goes to work at ..... a.m.

- a** 5      **b** 6      **c** 7      **d** 8

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/an ..... uses special tools like saws and hammers.

- a** carpenter      **b** nurse      **c** actor      **d** singer

2. Firefighters drive a ..... to go to fires quickly.

- a** bike      **b** bus      **c** fire truck      **d** boat

3. Sami used ..... wood to build the last house.

- a** weak      **b** soft      **c** strong      **d** clean

4. Omar uses ..... to help people breathe in smoke.

- a** oxygen tanks      **b** tables      **c** uniforms      **d** chairs

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**firefighter - safe - house - tools - repair**

Sami is a carpenter. He builds a ① ..... He uses ② ..... to make tables and chairs. Omar is a ③ ..... He wears a uniform to stay ④ .....



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Laila is a doctor. She works in a busy hospital. Every morning, she checks her patients and gives them medicine. Laila believes in doing her job carefully because she wants her patients to get better. One day, she was very tired, but she still smiled and helped everyone. Her friends say she is kind and hardworking. Laila thinks that helping people is the most important thing in life.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Laila works in a .....  
 a school                      b fire station                      c hospital                      d shop
2. Laila wants .....  
 a to finish quickly.                      b her patients to get better.  
 c to get money.                      d to rest.

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What does Laila do when she is tired?  
 -----
4. Why does Laila think helping people is important?  
 -----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the ..... (kind) doctor in the hospital.
2. Today is the ..... (busy) day at work.
3. Yasser is ..... (that) tallest boy in the school.
4. Which animal is the ..... (nicer)?

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

sami and omar always do their jobs well

-----

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The job you want when you grow up

Guiding words

fire fighter - helmet

Handwriting practice lines consisting of multiple sets of three horizontal dashed lines for writing.



# Test 1

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Everyone can help ..... animals.

- a** think                      **b** run                      **c** protect                      **d** eat

2. Small acts of kindness make our world .....

- a** better                      **b** expensive                      **c** bad                      **d** delicious

3. We create a ..... place for animals.

- a** colder                      **b** smaller                      **c** higher                      **d** safer

4. Being ..... to animals teaches us to be better people.

- a** kind                      **b** happy                      **c** bad                      **d** sad

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I see with my .....

- a** eyes                      **b** nose                      **c** mouth                      **d** ears

2. We ..... to help in the park

- a** make                      **b** guess                      **c** care                      **d** volunteer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**touch - hear - eyes - care - tongue**

I have five senses I see with my ① ..... I ② ..... with my ears. I smell with my nose. I taste with my ③ ..... I ④ ..... with my hands.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There was an old lion. He was very weak and couldn't hunt . He tricked animals and pretended to be sick in his cave. He called to the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way footprints . He didn't go into the cave and ran away safely.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The old lion was very weak and couldn't .....  
 a sleep                      b run                      c hunt                      d eat
- The fox didn't go into the ..... and ran away safely.  
 a cave                      b hole                      c mountain                      d cinema

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Why did the lion trick the animals?

.....

4. What made the fox wiser than the other animals?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My brother ..... (play) football every day.
- The market is ..... (busy) than parks on weekends.
- Do ..... ( she) live in a city or a village? - Yes, they do.
- They ..... (not play) football after school.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

are they in danger

.....

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**A Day at the Forest Park**

**Guiding Words**

forest park - forest guide - animals

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....



# Test 2

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The Red Sea Dugong is an \_\_\_\_\_ animal.  
☐ a thirsty      ☐ b hungry      ☐ c endangered      ☐ d healthy
- The Red Sea Dugong is in \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a Egypt      ☐ b America      ☐ c London      ☐ d France
- These gentle sea animals eat \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a grass      ☐ b fish      ☐ c shark      ☐ d wheat
- They are in danger because of \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a playing      ☐ b sleeping      ☐ c pollution      ☐ d swimming

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I \_\_\_\_\_ with my nose.  
☐ a see      ☐ b touch      ☐ c taste      ☐ d smell
- It is fun to \_\_\_\_\_ and make the park nice for everyone.  
☐ a buy      ☐ b clean      ☐ c sleep      ☐ d shout

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

grow - fresh - garden - fruits - homework

Sarah is clever girl. In the afternoon, Sarah does her <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ first. After that, she helps her mother in the <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. They <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fresh vegetables together. For dinner, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Mrs Mona is our English teacher. She is 45 years old. She is talking with Sama and Ramha in the school garden. They are talking about our senses. Senses help us understand the world around us—like sight, hearing, and smell. Senses also help us stay safe. For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about .....  
 a Mrs Mona      b school garden      c health      d senses
2. Mrs Mona is a teacher of .....  
 a science      b English      c Arabic      d maths

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Where are Mrs. Mona and the students?  
 -----

4. How can senses help us stay safe?  
 -----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A fox is often ..... (**clever**) than a wolf.  
 2. He ..... (**brush**) his teeth every day.  
 3. My grandpa is ..... (**wise**) person I know.  
 4. They ..... (**doesn't take**) the bus to school.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you have a daily routine  
 -----

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Healthy habits****Guiding Words**

good habits - strong and healthy - in the morning  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----



# Test 3

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Sarah is a ..... girl.

**a** healthy

**b** bad

**c** small

**d** tall

2. Sarah is ..... years old.

**a** two

**b** five

**c** seven

**d** ten

3. She follows good habits every day to stay .....

**a** cold

**b** strong

**c** delicious

**d** safe

4. She does some simple exercises in the .....

**a** park

**b** school

**c** street

**d** garden

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I clean ..... from the streets with my friends.

**a** trash

**b** gifts

**c** requests

**d** harvest

2. I touch with my .....

**a** arms

**b** heads

**c** hair

**d** hands

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pay - hear - restaurant - share - smell

One day, Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a <sup>1</sup> ..... He sat outside, enjoying the <sup>2</sup> ..... of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to <sup>3</sup> ..... with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him to <sup>4</sup> ..... the soup.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Noura is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden. For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Noura drinks ..... in the morning.  
**a** coffee                      **b** orange juice                      **c** mango juice                      **d** milk
2. Noura is a healthy .....-year-old girl.  
**a** eight                      **b** nine                      **c** twelve                      **d** ten

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What time does she wake up?

.....

4. How can Noura stay healthy?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We ..... (**aren't**) need to use cars every day.
2. Nora is ..... (**happy**) girl in the class.
3. She ..... (**carry**) her backpack every day.
4. A cheetah is ..... (**fast**) than a lion.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

she is my friend

.....

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**The senses**

**Guiding Words**

five - important - hear

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Test 4

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. I wake up early at ..... a.m.

**a** five

**b** six

**c** seven

**d** eight

2. I ..... my teeth at 6:10.

**a** bake

**b** do

**c** wash

**d** brush

3. I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and .....

**a** fruit

**b** beans

**c** rice

**d** honey

4. I go to school at .....

**a** five

**b** six

**c** seven

**d** eight

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wanda always wore the same ..... blue dress.

**a** sad

**b** faded

**c** closet

**d** quiet

2. I ..... with my ears.

**a** touch

**b** taste

**c** bake

**d** hear

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

designs - weave - carpets - festivals - bright

In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big ❶ ..... They make pottery and weave colorful ❷ ..... by hand. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in ❸ ..... colors and have special ❹ .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, Goha was hungry but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant . He sat outside, enjoying the smell of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his coin. The owner laughed and invited him in to share the soup.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Goha didn't have ..... money.  
 a many                      b some                      c enough                      d any
2. Goha is .....  
 a greedy                      b clever                      c stupid                      d rich

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Why did Goha sit outside the restaurant?  
 .....
4. What lesson do we learn from this story?  
 .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My brother and I ..... (**watches**) TV in the evening.
2. My new neighbor is ..... (**friendly**) than the last one.
3. She doesn't ..... (**meets**) her friends every day.
4. Mona is the ..... (**nicer**) friend I have.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

can you help me  
 .....

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Goha's great meal**

**Guiding Words**

walking - hungry - owner



# Test 5

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Egypt is my beloved .....

a garden

b town

c country

d city

2. Egypt has two special .....

a regions

b Niles

c schools

d trains

3. The Delta is in the .....

a south

b north

c east

d west

4. Each region has its traditions and .....

a air

b health

c pollution

d culture

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I taste with my .....

a tongue

b head

c eyes

d skin

2. This street is ..... It is full of trash.

a clean

b nice

c expensive

d dirty

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

check - senses - spaces - stronger - reach

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger <sup>1</sup> ..... than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay <sup>2</sup> ..... than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to <sup>3</sup> ..... their food. Vets often <sup>4</sup> ..... their health.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Having a daily routine is important. Healthy habits help us stay strong and healthy. Every day, I follow the same routine. I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit. I go to school at 7 am. After school, I have lunch with my family. I do my homework at 8 pm. I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about .....  
 a a daily routine                      b daily meals  
 c hunting animals                      d Healthy habitats
2. I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and .....  
 a fruit                      b bread                      c vegetables                      d eggs

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Why are healthy habits important?

-----

4. When do I go to bed?

-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This rock is harder ..... (then) that one.  
 2. Do cars ..... (moves) quickly in the morning?  
 3. I find the ..... (big) lions.  
 4. The nurse ..... (help) sick people.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

my bag is the heaviest

-----

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**My Healthy Life****Guiding Words**

a daily routine - healthy - strong

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# Test 6

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- In \_\_\_\_\_, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest.  
 a Cairo      b Upper Egypt      c Giza      d Sharkia
- People in Upper Egypt weave colorful carpets by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a feet      b teeth      c head      d hand
- Families sing \_\_\_\_\_ songs and tell old stories.  
 a traditional      b delicious      c fresh      d new
- In Nubia, houses are painted in \_\_\_\_\_ colors.  
 a modern      b high      c dark      d bright

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Senses help us \_\_\_\_\_ the world around us.  
 a move      b make      c forget      d understand
- They make pottery and weave colorful \_\_\_\_\_ by hand.  
 a carpets      b houses      c spaces      d cars

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

exercise - reach - cages - owners - healthier

Many people like keeping pets. Pets need daily care from their ① \_\_\_\_\_. Dogs need ② \_\_\_\_\_. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are ③ \_\_\_\_\_ than other animals. Birds need cleaner ④ \_\_\_\_\_ than other animals.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that still stands today. He said people helped to build it together many years ago.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Our neighborhood was very different ..... years ago!  
 a five                      b fifteen                      c fifty                      d thirty
- Grandpa showed me some old .....  
 a walls                      b photos                      c schools                      d stories

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- What did the neighborhood look like 50 years ago?

.....

- What did the community do together many years ago?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- This tree is the ..... (tall) tree in the park.
- She ..... (take) vitamins every morning.
- This orange is ..... (delicious) than the apple.
- Do ..... (he) take the bus to school? - Yes, I do.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

ahmed promised to always do his best

.....

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Helping the Community**

**Guiding Words**

help others - plant - feed

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Test 7

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. I work as a \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.

- a** tour guide      **b** vet      **c** teacher      **d** dentist

2. John is from \_\_\_\_\_.

- a** Paris      **b** America      **c** Giza      **d** London

3. Tourists take many \_\_\_\_\_ near the Pyramids.

- a** camels      **b** balls      **c** breaks      **d** pictures

4. People ride \_\_\_\_\_ near the Pyramids.

- a** horses      **b** camels      **c** monkeys      **d** elephants

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ her teeth and washes her face.

- a** grows      **b** makes      **c** watches      **d** brushes

2. \_\_\_\_\_ happens because there are many cars on the road.

- a** Lunch      **b** Pollution      **c** Behavior      **d** Bullying

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**healthier - important - place - healthy - teaches**

When we care for animals, we create a safer ① \_\_\_\_\_ for them. Being kind to animals ② \_\_\_\_\_ us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and ③ \_\_\_\_\_. Animals are ④ \_\_\_\_\_ in our life.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We have five senses. They are very important for us. We see with our eyes. We smell with our noses. We touch with our hands. We hear with our ears. We taste with our tongues.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about \_\_\_\_\_.

- a** schools      **b** senses      **c** tongue      **d** eyes

2. With hands, we can.....

**a** touch

**b** smell

**c** taste

**d** hear

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What are the five senses?

4. Are the senses important for us?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She is ..... (**short**) than her sister.

2. Every day, I ..... (**wakes**) up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth.

3. The dog is standing ..... (**under**) the door.

4. She ..... (**don't**) like pollution

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

houses are painted in bright colors in nubia.

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**My Culture**

**Guiding Words**

Each region - the Spring Festival - grow rice



# Test 8

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. In Cairo, we can visit .....

**a** the Red Sea

**b** history

**c** the Pyramids

**d** the Egyptian Museum

2. The Egyptian Museum is in .....

**a** Cairo

**b** Aswan

**c** Luxor

**d** Sohag

3. The Egyptian Museum has many ..... to see.

**a** cars

**b** gifts

**c** books

**d** treasures

4. We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some .....

**a** parks

**b** gifts

**c** glasses

**d** keys

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I didn't have enough ..... to buy food.

**a** coins

**b** books

**c** wood

**d** money

2. What Omar says is ..... It doesn't make sense.

**a** illogical

**b** appear

**c** dishonest

**d** dislike

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

shopping mall - borrow - sick - school - library

There are different places in my town. Young children go to ① ..... every morning to learn. They can ② ..... books from the library. When people feel ③ ....., they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the ④ ..... where many shops sell different things.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about .....

- a** The Arabian Leopard  
**c** routine

- b** animals  
**d** habits

2. The Arabian Leopard is a kind of .....

- a** pets  
**b** horses

- c** dogs  
**d** cats

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Where does the Arabian Leopard live?

.....

4. Why are these animals in danger?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My sister and I ..... (**sleeps**) early every night.

2. This new sweater is ..... (**nice**) than my old one.

3. The house is ..... (**on**) the tree and the school.

4. They ..... (**doesn't**) use trash bins.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

who is your hero

.....

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Upper Egypt culture

**Guiding Words**

different - celebrate - pottery

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



# Test 9

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Our city has many important .....  
 a places                      b shops                      c museums                      d Niles
- One ..... place is the school.  
 a fresh                      b important                      c bad                      d delicious
- Students go to school to learn and meet .....  
 a friends                      b animals                      c doctors                      d vets
- The library has many books to read or .....  
 a write                      b talk                      c buy                      d borrow

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- How was Goha clever in ..... the problem?  
 a annoying                      b solving                      c cleaning                      d helping
- The teacher says my question is ..... to the lesson.  
 a legal                      b irrelevant                      c appear                      d irresponsible

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

way - fresh - plants - warm - pictures

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear ① ..... clothes because it's cold. Along the ② ....., they see colorful rocks and small ③ ....., and some tourists can take ④ .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Zoo animals, like elephants and lions, need space, food, and vet checks. Wild animals face challenges, like their homes getting smaller. They also need clean water and safe places to live in. Pets, like dogs and rabbits, need daily care, exercise, and fresh food. Birds need clean cages, and all pets need vets. We can help by being kind and caring for animals.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Animals need our help to stay ..... and safe.

**a** sad

**b** healthy

**c** hungry

**d** angry

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to .....

**a** zoo animals

**b** wild animals

**c** pets

**d** habits

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What do pets need?

-----

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (**Does**) you have a car or a bike?

2. I couldn't see the cat because it was ..... (**to**) the boxes.

3. The city is ..... (**noisy**) than the countryside.

4. She ..... (**go**) to work on foot every morning.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what time do you go to school

-----

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**My neighborhood**

**Guiding Words**

Fifty years ago - old market - small houses

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# Test 10

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel .....

- a** strong                      **b** delicious                      **c** amazing                      **d** better

2. Next to the hospital is the .....

- a** post office                      **b** school                      **c** office                      **d** park

3. In the post office, people send .....

- a** gifts                      **b** treasures                      **c** letters                      **d** books

4. The post office help people to stay .....

- a** connected                      **b** strong                      **c** healthy                      **d** happy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Having a daily ..... is important.

- a** scaring                      **b** health                      **c** carpet                      **d** routine

2. I saw the old school that still ..... today.

- a** stands                      **b** building                      **c** doing                      **d** long

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

helpful - marks - senses - mentor - shy

Noha is a helpful teacher. She does very kind and <sup>1</sup> ..... work!. She helps <sup>2</sup> ..... students become brave. When they get good <sup>3</sup> ....., it feels so nice. It makes her happy when they do well!

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali! I work as a tour guide in Egypt. I am with my friend John in Cairo. It is his first visit to Egypt. We can visit the Pyramids. They are very nice. Tourists take many pictures here. Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun! We can visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see. We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some gifts.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Ali is a \ an \_\_\_\_\_

- a** tourist                      **b** doctor                      **c** engineer                      **d** a tour guide

2. We can go to \_\_\_\_\_ to buy some gifts.

- a** Khan Al-Khalili                      **b** the museum                      **c** the Pyramids                      **d** Egypt

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What do tourists take in Egypt?

-----

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ **(Do)** your father go there by car?

2. The turtle is \_\_\_\_\_ **(slow)** than the rabbit.

3. The cat is \_\_\_\_\_ **(next)** the boxes.

4. Layla \_\_\_\_\_ **(drink)** water every morning

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

why is her job helpful

-----



**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

## A visit to the Pyramids

### Guiding Words

visit - pictures - camels

[illegible]

# Test 11

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Many tourists visit St. Catherine .....

- a** City                      **b** Mountain                      **c** Town                      **d** Lake

2. St. Catherine Mountain is in .....

- a** Aswan                      **b** Luxor                      **c** Cairo                      **d** South Sinai

3. St. Catherine Mountain is a nice .....

- a** place                      **b** museum                      **c** park                      **d** post office

4. Many tourists wear ..... clothes because it's cold.

- a** black                      **b** white                      **c** cold                      **d** warm

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I wash my face and get ..... for school.

- a** breakfast                      **b** strong                      **c** warm                      **d** dressed

2. A \ An ..... wears a yellow helmet and a vest. He designs buildings.

- a** firefighter                      **b** police officer                      **c** nurse                      **d** engineer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**firefighter - photo - photographer - dangerous - animals**

This is my uncle, Amr. He takes pictures of wild ① ..... in nature. He is a very smart wildlife ② ..... Everyone says that Amr's job is really ③ ..... , but he finds it quite interesting. Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best ④ ..... He likes wild animals and being in nature.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Our city has many important places that help people every day . These places make our city a great place to live. Young children go to school every morning to learn. They can borrow books from the library. When people feel sick, they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the shopping mall where many shops sell different things.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Young children go to school every morning to .....

- a** see treasures      **b** meet friends      **c** learn      **d** borrow books

2. The underlined word "They" refers to .....

- a** important places      **b** Young children      **c** shops      **d** people

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. Why do people enjoy going to the shopping mall?

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Does your street ..... (**has**) this problem?

2. The cat is ..... (**behind**) to the box.

3. I ..... (**plays**) sports after school every day.

4. She is taller ..... (**then**) her mother.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

let's talk about your costumes

.....

- 7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**  
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

### My school

#### Guiding Words

important place - learn - teachers

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

## Test 12

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. My father is ----- years old.

**a** 45

**b** 40

**c** 30

**d** 35

2. My father is a -----

**a** doctor

**b** vet

**c** nurse

**d** dentist

3. He wears a ----- coat.

**a** white

**b** black

**c** yellow

**d** blue

4. My mother teaches -----

**a** science

**b** Arabic

**c** maths

**d** English



**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. In the evening, I ..... a shower.

- a** paint                      **b** share                      **c** make                      **d** take

2. A \ An ..... stops fires and saves people.

- a** firefighter                      **b** police officer                      **c** nurse                      **d** doctor

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**protective - station - spotted - firefighter - stripes**

My neighbor, Omar is a very kind man. He is a <sup>1</sup> ..... at our local fire  
<sup>2</sup> ..... He wears a thick <sup>3</sup> ..... uniform with bright yellow <sup>4</sup> .....  
and a heavy helmet to keep him safe.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. After many years of hard work, he felt tired and wanted to stop. But the king asked him to build one last house as a gift to the village. Sami used weak wood and didn't check the windows or the doors. When the house was finished, the king said it was for him. Sami was shocked. He knew he had worked poorly. He felt regret and promised to always do his best.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Sami was a skilled .....

- a** king                      **b** dentist                      **c** baker                      **d** carpenter

2. Sami was ..... He knew he had worked poorly.

- a** poor                      **b** shocked                      **c** wise                      **d** tired

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. How did Sami feel when he knew the house was his?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

-----

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My sister is ..... ( young ) than me.
2. The cat is ..... (at) front of the box.
3. Every morning, we ..... (going) to school on foot.
4. .... (Does) you know how to solve this problem?

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

well done, yasser

-----

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**A doctor**

**Guiding Words**

work - wear - health

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----



# Test 13

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Omar is a\ an .....

a engineer

b officer

c firefighter

d doctor

2. He wears a blue uniform and a .....

a helmet

b hat

c cap

d jacket

3. He uses a ..... to stop fires.

a water

b powder

c water hose

d dust

4. Every day, he keeps the fire ..... ready.

a trunk

b hose

c water

d truck

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A) I can hear birds singing. B) That's your sense of .....

a hearing

b smell

c touch

d sight

2. Wild animals face different .....

a jungles

b parks

c challenges

d communities

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

office - borrow - learn - connect - packages

Our city has many important places that help people every day. Students go to school to ① ..... and meet friends. The library has many books to read or ② ..... Next to the hospital is the post ③ ....., where people send letters and ④ ..... to stay connected.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Our bodies have five amazing senses that help us understand the world! Sight lets us see with our eyes, showing us colors, shapes, and how far away things are. Hearing uses our ears to pick up sounds. With our nose, smell helps us identify different perfumes, like fresh flowers or baking cookies. Our tongue allows us to taste food and drinks. Finally, touch with our skin helps us feel things. Together, these senses give us a full picture of the world around us.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The text is about .....  
 a bodies                      b senses                      c the world                      d colors
- With hands, we can .....  
 a touch                      b smell                      c taste                      d hear

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- Why are the five senses important?  
 .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence.  
 .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My mother ..... (**isn't**) have glasses.
- She is ..... (**clever**) girl at school.
- Do you ..... (**knows**) how to solve this problem?
- I couldn't see the cat because it was ..... (**on**) the boxes.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you have a car  
 .....

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Your favorite job**

**Guiding Words**

doctor - important - check - medicine - help



# Test 14

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. A ..... uses a long water hose.

- a vet                      b cleaner                      c baker                      d firefighter

2. He helps stop .....

- a walking                      b fires                      c eating                      d trying

3. He has a special ..... for tall buildings.

- a ladder                      b wall                      c truck                      d hose

4. He saves ..... from fire.

- a only people                      b only animals                      c only pets                      d people and pets

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ..... boy ate all the cookies.

- a dangerous                      b sharp                      c bored                      d greedy

2. Pets need daily ..... from their owners.

- a care                      b careless                      c hate                      d hit

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

uniform - vest - coat - wears - helmet

A doctor wears a white ① ..... A nurse wears a blue ② ..... and a cap. A police officer ③ ..... a white uniform and a cap. An engineer wears a yellow helmet and a vest. A firefighter wears a blue uniform and a red ④ .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I am a student who follows good habits every day. I wake up early at 6:30 am and do some exercises to start my day feeling refreshed. After that, I get dressed and eat

a healthy breakfast before I go to school at 7. When I go home in the afternoon, I make sure to do my homework. I always try to sleep early so I am ready for the next day. This daily routine helps me stay healthy and focused.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about .....

- a** good habits      **b** unhealthy habits      **c** a school day      **d** sleeping early

2. At 7, I .....

- a** wake up early      **b** go home  
**c** do my homework      **d** go to school

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. Why is it important to do some exercises?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Where does she ..... (**bought**) her clothes?

2. Omar takes the ..... (**great**) photos.

3. This is my living room! My family picture is ..... (**in**) the wall

4. Rabbits are ..... (**health**) than other animals.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

may I help you

.....



**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

a skilled carpenter

**Guiding Words**

lived - strong houses - admired - rest

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

## Test 15

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. My ..... was a skilled carpenter.

**a** father

**b** uncle

**c** brother

**d** grandfather

2. He lived in a ..... village.

**a** quiet

**b** tiring

**c** skilled

**d** worried

3. He built strong houses and beautiful .....

**a** walls

**b** information

**c** furniture

**d** schools

4. People come to see his wooden ..... and tables.

**a** clay

**b** jewelry

**c** desks

**d** chairs

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hany went ..... and changed into his best clothes.

- a** home                      **b** school                      **c** mall                      **d** shop

2. It is a museum with ..... that teach us about our history.

- a** people                      **b** souvenirs                      **c** treasures                      **d** gifts

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

marks - helpful – senses – mentor – grow

Noha is a <sup>1</sup> ..... She likes her job. She does very kind and <sup>2</sup> ..... work! She helps young students learn and <sup>3</sup> ..... She helps shy students become brave. When they get good <sup>4</sup> ....., it feels so nice. It makes her happy when they do well!"

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I love to volunteer in my community. Last weekend, I helped collect rubbish from the park, making it much cleaner for everyone. It felt great to plant some trees too; they'll grow big and beautiful. Another time, c I also make sure to feed the animals and birds that live nearby. Every little bit of help makes our community a better place for all of us!

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Last weekend, I helped ..... from the park.

- a** collect rubbish                      **b** feed the animals                      **c** plant trees                      **d** clean the streets

2. It felt ..... to plant some trees.

- a** worried                      **b** surprise                      **c** great                      **d** tired

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What is the passage about?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....



**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How ..... **(are)** you go to work every week?
2. My school is in ..... **(next)** of the hospital.
3. Cars are fast, but planes are ..... **(fast)**.
4. August is the ..... **(hot)** month of the year.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

they are strong Hand.

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

How can we help our community?

**Guiding Words**

volunteer - collect - plant - clean - feed

# Test 16

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Samy is a very smart wildlife .....  
 a photographer      b teacher      c vet      d carpenter
- Samy finds his job quite .....  
 a bad      b worried      c dangerous      d interesting
- Samy takes pictures of .....  
 a zoos      b the Nile      c wild animals      d people
- He waits for a very long time to get the best .....  
 a pounds photo      b friend      c toos

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- It's a good feeling to ..... and help others.  
 a harm      b make      c volunteer      d collect
- We went to the Khan Al-Khalili ..... to buy gifts.  
 a Oasis      b Bazaar      c mall      d tower

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plenty - hear - energy - break - bread

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown ① ..... These foods give her ② ..... for the day. At school, Sarah drinks ③ ..... of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during ④ ..... time



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Obayda. I am ten years old. I am in a near school. I like my teachers because they are kind to me. When I grow up, I want to be a doctor. It is an important job. Doctors wear a white coat. They work in hospitals. They help sick people and check their health. They give them medicine.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Obayda's school is .....

**a** far

**b** big

**c** near

**d** new

2. Being a doctor, it is a \ an ..... job.

**a** interesting

**b** boring

**c** dangerous

**d** amazing

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What is the general idea of the passage?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They ..... (**visiting**) Alexandria every summer holiday.

2. Ali is taller ..... (**thin**) Mahmoud.

3. Does your father ..... (**went**) to work on foot?

4. This tree is the ..... (**tall**) tree in the park.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Help me please

- 7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Your traditions and celebrations**

**Guiding Words**

sugar cane harvest - festivals - colorful carpets - traditional songs

## Test 17

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. In the \_\_\_\_\_, Sarah takes a shower.

**a** morning

**b** evening

**c** night

**d** afternoon

2. She goes to \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:30 p.m.

**a** cinema

**b** school

**c** bed

**d** her sister

3. She sleeps for \_\_\_\_\_ hours every night.

**a** 6

**b** 7

**c** 8

**d** 9

4. Getting enough sleep helps her body stay \_\_\_\_\_

**a** healthy

**b** sharp

**c** dark

**d** thin



**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sometimes, I ..... the dogs and cats.

- a** eat                      **b** bake                      **c** plant                      **d** feed

2. A ..... is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.

- a** tower                      **b** cave                      **c** footprint                      **d** community

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**food - volunteers - community - care - plant**

We always help our <sup>1</sup> ..... I clean trash from the streets with my friends every Saturday. I <sup>2</sup> ..... trees in the park. Sometimes, I feed the dogs and cats. I feel so happy when I give them <sup>3</sup> .....! My sister helps our neighbors, and she <sup>4</sup> ..... at the community park.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Our community has many problems. We should discuss solutions to fix them. The first problem is traffic. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools. We don't need to use cars every day. We can solve this problem by taking the school bus instead. We can also use bikes. There will be fewer cars on the road.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We should ..... solutions to fix them.

- a** support                      **b** volunteer                      **c** discuss                      **d** has

2. When we use bikes, there will be ..... cars on the road.

- a** fewer                      **b** many                      **c** more                      **d** much

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What is the general idea of the passage?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She ..... (**carry**) her backpack every day.
2. A zebra is ..... (**short**) than a giraffe
3. .... (**Do**) your street have this problem?
4. The cat is ..... (**behind**) to the box

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we have five senses

**7 Write a text of Eighteen (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**How to keep the pets healthy**

**Guiding Words**

help - special care - zoo animals - elephants - giraffes



AL - Azhar General Tests

AL- Azhar

Test 18

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. My \_\_\_\_\_ is a doctor.

a brother

b mother

c grandfather

d father

2. He wakes up at \_\_\_\_\_ am.

a 7

b 8

c 6

d 9

3. Being a doctor is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ job.

a fresh

b expensive

c hard

d amazing

2 Read and complete the dialogue::

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

wear - designs - helmet - engineer

Sami : What does your dad do?

Ali : He works as an 1 \_\_\_\_\_

Sami : What does he 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Ali : He wears a yellow 3 \_\_\_\_\_

Sami : What does he do at his job?

Ali : He 4 \_\_\_\_\_ new buildings.

3 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station. He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. Every day at the station, he checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Omar work? \_\_\_\_\_

2. What is Omar's uniform? \_\_\_\_\_

**B- Choose the correct answer:**

3. Omar is a \ an .....  
☐ a doctor                      ☐ b police officer                      ☐ c teacher                      ☐ d firefighter
4. Omar checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire ..... ready.  
☐ a truck                      ☐ b car                      ☐ c water                      ☐ d tools
5. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right .....  
☐ a way                      ☐ b desk                      ☐ c place                      ☐ d helmet

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How do our senses help us ..... safe?  
☐ a wake up                      ☐ b visit                      ☐ c learn                      ☐ d stay
2. Traffic is a ..... near schools in the morning.  
☐ a problem                      ☐ b community                      ☐ c pollution                      ☐ d solution
3. Families sing traditional songs and tell old .....  
☐ a programs                      ☐ b books                      ☐ c jobs                      ☐ d stories
4. This tree is ..... tree in the park.  
☐ a tallest                      ☐ b tall                      ☐ c taller                      ☐ d the tallest
5. The school is ..... to the station.  
☐ a next                      ☐ b in front of                      ☐ c under                      ☐ d behind

**5 Reorder:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. galabeyas - clothes - wear - or - modern - Men.  
 -----
2. with - you - usually - Do - father - go - your?  
 -----
3. smaller - is - than - the dog - The cat.  
 -----
4. you - country - can - find - In which - the Pyramids?  
 -----
5. a blue - wears - The nurse - uniform.  
 -----



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Wanda was a ..... girl.

a quiet

b clever

c rich

d stupid

2. She sat in the back of the .....

a hospital

b library

c line

d classroom

3. Wanda wore the same faded blue .....

a shirt

b coat

c dress

d skirt

2 Read and complete the dialogue::

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

library - borrow - Why - Fine

Dina : Hello, Mona. How are you?

Mona : Hi, Dina. 1 ..... , thank you.

Dina : Where are you going?

Mona : To the 2 .....

Dina : 3 ..... are you going there?

Mona : I want to 4 ..... a book.

3 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

This is my uncle, Amr. He takes pictures of wild animals in nature. He is a very smart wildlife photographer. Everyone says that Amr's job is really dangerous. Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best photo. He likes wild animals and being in nature.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Amr work?

.....

2. What does he like?

.....

**B- Choose the correct answer:**

3. Amr is my .....  
☐ a father                      ☐ b teacher                      ☐ c photographer                      ☐ d uncle
4. He takes pictures of ..... in nature.  
☐ a seas                      ☐ b clouds                      ☐ c people                      ☐ d animals
5. Everyone says that Amr's job is really .....  
☐ a dangerous                      ☐ b amazing                      ☐ c interesting                      ☐ d tired

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The girl was ..... She hides behind her mother's legs.  
☐ a tired                      ☐ b shy                      ☐ c clever                      ☐ d sad
2. That is very bad. He used ..... wood to build the house.  
☐ a strong                      ☐ b tall                      ☐ c new                      ☐ d weak
3. He wears a thick ..... uniform.  
☐ a protective                      ☐ b active                      ☐ c amazed                      ☐ d tired
4. Nora is the ..... girl in the class.  
☐ a happier                      ☐ b most happy                      ☐ c happy                      ☐ d happiest
5. Does your father ..... a new car?  
☐ a have                      ☐ b having                      ☐ c has                      ☐ d to have

**5 Reorder:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. understand - help - Senses - the world - us.  
 -----
2. help - We - to - in - the park - volunteer.  
 -----
3. the animals - He - visitors - shows.  
 -----
4. lots of - The Siwa Oasis - trees - has.  
 -----
5. go to - can - place - people - this - How ?  
 -----



# Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع  
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات  
الخاصة بكتاب **Bit 6 Bit**

## Test on Unit 1

I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. In the evening, I take a shower and have dinner. I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy..

## Test on Unit 2

Akram is a good student in primary four. Akram's father is a farmer. He grows rice and cotton. Akram helps his father on the farm. Akram is proud of his father.

## Test on Unit 3

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need some exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables. They are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

## Test on Unit 4

John is from America. He is ten years old. He wants to visit Hurgada. He likes the sea and wants to see the colorful fish.

## Test on Unit 5

I'm Amr. My dad is an engineer. He designs buildings. He wears a vest and a helmet at work. He loves his job. He goes to work at 7 a.m.

## General Tests

### Test 1

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people.

### Test 2

The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

### Test 3

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. In the morning, She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

### Test 4

I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth at 6:10. I wash my face and get dressed for school. I go to school at 7. Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit

**Test 5**

Egypt is my beloved country. Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture.

**Test 6**

In Upper Egypt, People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs

**Test 7**

I work as a tour guide in Egypt. My friend John is from London. This is his first time in Egypt. The Pyramids are very nice. Tourists take many pictures here. Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!

**Test 8**

In Cairo, We can visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too! We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some gifts. It is an old place.

**Test 9**

Our city has many important places. One important place is the school. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow.

**Test 10**

Another important place in my city is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better. Next to the hospital is the post office, where people send letters and packages to stay connected.

**Test 11**

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. It is a nice place. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold.

**Test 12**

My father is 45 years old. He is a doctor. He loves his job. He wears a white coat. He helps sick people and checks their health. My mother is a teacher. She teaches English.

**Test 13**

Omar is a firefighter. He wears a blue uniform and a helmet to stay safe. Every day, he checks his equipment and keeps the fire truck ready. When people need help, Omar and his team quickly drive to help them. He uses a long water hose to stop fires.

**Test 14**

A firefighter uses a long water hose to stop fires. He also has a special ladder for tall buildings. He saves people and pets from fire. He loves his job because he likes saving people and animals.



**Test 15**

My father was a skilled carpenter. He lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built strong houses and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his wooden chairs and tables.

**Test 16**

Samy takes pictures of wild animals. He is a very smart wildlife photographer. His job is very dangerous, but he finds it quite interesting. Sometimes, he waits for a very long time to get the best photo.

**Test 17**

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth. She goes to bed early at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours

every night. Getting enough sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay sharp.

**Test 18**

My father is a doctor. He wakes up at 7 am. He wears a white coat. He helps sick people and check their health. Being a doctor is a hard job.

**Test 19**

There was a girl named Wanda. She was a quiet girl. She sat in the back of the classroom. Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day. Despite this, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred beautiful dresses at home.